

DUBLIN	WILLIAM M ^C GEE, 18, NASSAU STREET
EDINBURGH	T G STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET
GLASGOW	OGLE & CO, 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE, SQUARE
BERLIN	ASHER & CO, UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11
BOSTON, U S	DUTTON & CO
NEW YORK	C SCRIBNER & CO, LEYPOLDT & HOLT
PHILADELPHIA	J B LIPPINCOTT & CO



Lancelot of the Lake

A SCOTTISH METRICAL ROMANCE,

(ABOUT 1490 -1500 A.D.)

RE-EDITED

FROM A MANUSCRIPT IN THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY,

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY

THE REV W. W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND TRANSLATOR OF THE SONGS AND
BALLADS OF UHLAND

[Second and Revised Edition, 1870]

LONDON

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N TRUBNER & CO, 60, PATERNOSTER ROW

MDCCLXIV

P R E F A C E.

I — DESCRIPTION OF THE MS., ETC

A FORMER edition of the present poem was printed for the Maitland Club, in 1839, and edited by Joseph Stevenson, Esq. It has saved me all trouble of transcription, but by no means, I am sorry to say, that of correction. Those who possess the older edition will readily perceive that it differs from the present one very frequently indeed, and that the variations are often such as considerably to affect the sense. Many of the errors in it (such as *casualtyee* for *casualytee*, *g_none*, for *gone*, *repent* for *repent*) are clearly typographical, but there are others which would incline me to believe that the transcription was too hastily executed, several passages being quite meaningless. Near the conclusion of Mr Stevenson's preface we read “The pieces which have been selected for the present volume¹ are printed with such errors of transcription as have crept into them by the carelessness of the scribe,” a statement which certainly implies that there was no intention on his part of departing from the original. Yet that he sometimes unconsciously did so to such an extent as considerably to alter (or destroy) the sense, the reader may readily judge from a few examples —

¹ The volume contains other poems besides “Sir Lancelot”

LINE	EDITION OF 1839	TRUE READING OF THE MS.
26	fatil (<i>fatal</i>),	fatit (<i>fated</i>)
285	unarmyt (<i>unarmed</i>),	enarmyt (<i>fully armed</i>)
682	can here,	cam here
700	rendit (<i>rent</i>),	vondit (<i>wounded</i>)
764	refuse (<i>refusal?</i>),	ri prefe (<i>desire</i>)
861	felith (<i>feeleth</i>),	ſtith (<i>settleth</i>)
1054	vyt,	rycht
1084	spenis,	spuris
1455	cunyng (<i>coming</i>),	cunyng (<i>skill</i>)
1621	he war,	he war (<i>brawle</i>)
1641	promysl,	punyſl (<i>punish</i>)
2010	ane desyne,	medysyne
2092	born,	lorn (<i>lost</i>)
2114	havin,	harn
2142	Hymene ('),	hyme (<i>him</i>)
2219	such,	furth (<i>forth</i>)
2245	al so y vroght,	al fol y vroght.
2279	chichingis ('),	thithingis (<i>tulings</i>)
2446	love,	lore (<i>teaching</i>) Etc

Several omissions also occur, as, e.g., of the word "off" in l. 7, of the word "tressore" in l. 1715, and of four whole lines at a time in two instances, viz., lines 1191-4, and 2877-80. It will be found, in fact, that the former text can seldom be safely quoted for the purposes of philology, and I cannot but think Mr Stevenson's claim of being accurate to be especially unfortunate, and the more so, because the genuine text is much simpler and more intelligible than the one which he has given.

The original MS. is to be found in the Cambridge University Library, marked Kk 1 5. It formerly formed part of a thick volume, labelled "Tracts," but these are now being separated, for greater convenience, into several volumes. The MS. of "Lancelot" has little to do with any of the rest as regards its subject, but several other pieces are in the same hand-writing, and, at the end of one of them, an

abstract of Solomon's proverbs, occur the words, "Explicitunt Dicta Salomonis, per manum V de F"¹ This hand-writing, though close, is very regular, and my own impression certainly is that the scribe has almost always succeeded in preserving the sense of the poem, though there is much confusion in the dialectal forms, as will be shewn presently

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS as can be represented by printed letters, every peculiarity being preserved as far as practicable, even including the use of *y* for *p* (or *th*), so that the reader must remember that *yow* in l. 94 stands for *thow*, and *yas* in l. 160 for *this*, and so on, but this ought not to cause much difficulty. The sole points of difference are the following

1 In the MS the headings "Prologue," "Book I" etc., do not occur

2 The lines do not always begin (in the MS) with a capital letter

3 The letters *italicised* are (in the MS) represented by signs of contraction. One source of difficulty is the flourish over a word, used *sometimes* as a contraction for *m* or *n*. I have expanded this flourish as an *m* or *n* wherever such letter is manifestly required, but it also occurs where it is best to attach to it no value. In such instances, the flourish occurs most frequently over the last word in a line, and (except very rarely) only over words which have an *m* or *n* in them. It would thus seem that their presence is due to the fact of the scribe wanting employment for his pen after the line had been written, and that the flourish therefore appears over certain words, not so much because the *n* is *wanting* in them, as because it is *there already*. Such words have a special attraction for the wandering pen. Still, in order that the reader

¹ See Mr Lumby's editions of "Early Scottish Verse" and "Ratis Rav-ing," both edited for the E. E. T. S. from this MS. Only the latter of these is in the hand writing of V de F.

may know wherever such flourishes occur, they have all been noted down, thus, in l 46, the stroke over the *n* in "gren" means that a long flourish occurs drawn over the whole word, and the reader who wishes to expand this word into "grenē" or "grenn" may easily do it for himself, though he should observe that the most usual form of the word is simply "gren," as in lines 1000, 1305

In a few nouns ending in *-l*, the plural is indicated by a stroke drawn through the doubled letter, as in *perulīs*, *sadilīs*, etc., and even the word *ellis* (else) is thus abbreviated

4 I am responsible for all hyphens, and letters and words between square brackets, thus, "with-outen" is in the MS "with outen," and "knych[t]ly" is written "knychly" Whenever a line begins with a capital letter included between two brackets, the original has a blank space left, evidently intended for an illuminated letter Wherever illuminated letters actually occur in the MS, they are denoted in this edition by large capitals

5 We find, in the MS, both the long and the twisted *s* (*f* and *s*) These have been noted down as they occur, though I do not observe any law for their use The letter "*f*" has been adopted as closely resembling a symbol in the MS, which apparently has the force of double *s*, and is not unlike the "*sz*" used in modern German hand-writing It may be conveniently denoted by *ss* when the type "*f*" is not to be had, and is sometimes so represented in the "Notes"

6 The MS is, of course, not punctuated The punctuation in the present edition is mostly new, and many passages, which in the former edition were meaningless, have thus been rendered easily intelligible I am also responsible for the headings of the pages, the abstract at the sides of them, the numbering of the folios in the margin, the notes, and the glossary, which I hope may be found useful The greatest

care has been taken to make the text accurate, the proof-sheets having been compared with the MS *three times* throughout¹

II—DESCRIPTION OF THE POEM

The poem itself is a loose paraphrase of not quite fourteen folios of the first of the three volumes of the French Romance of Lancelot du Lac, if we refer to it as reprinted at Paris in 1513, in three volumes, thin folio, double-columned². The English poet has set aside the French Prologue, and written a new one of his own, and has afterwards translated and amplified that portion of the Romance which narrates the invasion of Arthur's territory by "le roy de oultre les marches, nomme galehault" (in the English *Gahot*), and the defeat of the said king by Arthur and his allies.

The Prologue (lines 1-334) tells how the author undertook to write a romance to please his lady-love, and how, after deciding to take as his subject the story of Lancelot as told in the French Romance, yet finding himself unequal to a close translation of the whole of it, he determined to give a para-

¹ This refers to the edition printed in 1865. In executing the present reprint, the proof sheets have been once more compared with the MS, and a very few insignificant errors have been thus detected and rectified.

² "As to the Romance of Sir Lancelot, our author [Gower], among others on the subject, refers to a volume of which he was the hero, perhaps that of Robert de Borron, altered soon afterwards by Godefroy de Leigny, under the title of *Le Roman de la Charrette*, and printed, with additions, at Paris by Antony Verard, in the year 1494."

For if thou wilt the bokes rede
Of Launcelot and other mo,
Then might thou seen how it was tho
Of armes," etc (GOWER *Confessio Amantis*, Book iv.)

Quoted from Warton's English Poetry, vol 11, p 234, ed 1840. I quote this as bearing somewhat on the subject, though it should be observed that *Le Roman de la Charrette* is not the same with *Lancelot du Lac*, but only a romance of the same class. Chaucer also refers to Lancelot in his Nonnes Pies Tale, l 392, and it is mentioned in the famous lines of Dante (*Inferno* v 127)—

"Noi leggevamo un giorno per diletto
Di Lanciolotto, come amoi lo strinse," &c

phrase of a portion of it only After giving us a brief summary of the earlier part by the simple process of telling us what he will *not* relate, he proposes to begin the story at the point where Lancelot has been made prisoner by the lady of Melyhalt, and to take as his subject the wars between Arthur and Galiot, and the distinction which Lancelot won in them, and afterwards to tell how Lancelot made peace between these two kings, and was consequently rewarded by Venus, who

“makith hyme his ladice grace to have” (l 311)

The latter part of the poem, it may be observed, has not come down to us The author then concludes his Prologue by beseeching to have the support of a very celebrated poet, whose name he will not mention, but will only say that

“Ye fresch enditing of his lanting young
Out through yis² world so wid is yroung,” etc¹ (l 328)

The first Book introduces us to King Arthur at Carlisle² The king is visited by dreams, which he imagines to forebode misfortune, he therefore convokes all his clerks, and inquires of them the meaning of the dreams, proposing to hang them in the event of their refusal Thus strongly urged, they tell him that those on whom he most relies will fail him at his need, and when he further inquires if this evil fate can be averted, they answer him very obscurely that it can only be remedied by help of the water-lion, the leech, and the flower, a reply which the king evidently regards as unsatisfactory Soon after an aged knight, fully armed, enters the palace, with a message from King Galiot, requiring him to give “tribute and rent” Arthur at once refuses, somewhat to the astonishment of the knight, who is amazed at his hardihood Next arrives a message from the lady of Melyhalt, informing Arthur of the

¹ He does not necessarily imply that the poet invoked was still alive, and we might almost suppose Petrarch to be meant, who was more proud of his Latin poem called “Africa” than of his odes and sonnets. See Hallam’s Literary History (4 vols), vol 1, p 85 But this is pure conjecture

² But the French has “Cardueil” See l 2158



actual presence of Galiot's army. We are then momentarily introduced to Lancelot, who is pining miserably in the lady's custody. Next follows a description of Galiot's army, at sight of the approach of which King Arthur and his "niece," Sir Gawain, confer as to the best means of resistance. In the ensuing battle Sir Gawain greatly distinguishes himself, but is at last severely wounded. Sir Lancelot, coming to hear of Sir Gawain's deeds, craves leave of the lady to be allowed to take part in the next conflict, who grants him his boon on condition that he promise to return to his prison. She then provides for him a red courser, and a complete suit of red armour, in which guise he appears at the second battle, and is the "head and comfort of the field," the queen and Sir Gawain beholding his exploits from a tower. The result of the battle convinces Galiot that Arthur is not strong enough at present to resist him sufficiently, and that he thus runs the risk of a too easy, and therefore dishonourable, conquest, for which excellent reason he grants Arthur a twelvemonth's truce, with a promise to return again in increased force at the expiration of that period. Sir Lancelot returns to Melyhalt according to promise, and the lady is well pleased at hearing the reports of his famous deeds, and visits him when asleep, out of curiosity to observe his appearance after the fight.

In the Second Book the story makes but little progress, nearly the whole of it being occupied by a long lecture or sermon delivered to Arthur by a "master," named Amytans, on the duties of a king, the chief one being that a king should give presents to everybody—a duty which is insisted on with laborious tediousness. Lines 1320-2130 are almost entirely occupied with this subject, and will be found to be the driest part of the whole narrative. In the course of his lecture, Amytans explains at great length the obscure prophecy mentioned above, shewing that by the water-lion is meant God the Father, by the leech God the Son, and by the flower the Virgin

Mary Though the outline of a similar lecture exists in the old French text, there would seem to be a special reason for the length to which it is here expanded Some lines certainly seem to hint at events passing in Scotland at the time when the poem was composed Thus, "kings may be excused when of tender age" (l 1658), but when they come to years of discretion should punish those that have wrested the law Again we find (l 1920) strong warnings against flatterers, concluding (l 1940) with the expression,

"Wo to the realme that havith such o chuns!"

Such hints may remind us of the long minorities of James II and James III, and, whilst speaking on this subject, I may note a somewhat remarkable coincidence When King Arthur, as related in Book I, asks the meaning of his dream, he is told that it signifies that "they in whom he most trusts will fail him" (l 499), and he afterwards laments (l 1151) how his "men fail him at need" Now when we read that a story is current of a prophetess having told James III that he was destined to "fall by the hands of his own kindred,"¹ and that that monarch was in the habit of consulting *astrologers*² (compare l 432) as to the dangers that threatened him, it seems quite possible that the poem was really composed about the year 1478; and this supposition is consistent with the fact that the hand-writing of the present MS copy belongs to the very end of the fifteenth century

Towards the end of the Second Book, we learn that the twelvemonth's truce draws near its end, and that Sir Lancelot again obtains permission from the lady to be present in the approaching combat, choosing this time to be arrayed in "armys al of blak" (l 2426)

¹ Tytler's History of Scotland (Edinburgh, 1841), vol iv, p 216

² The French text does not say anything about "astronomy" We may especially note the following lines, as *not* being in the French, viz., lines 1478 1496, 1528-1542, 1599-1644, 1658 1680, and the long passage 1752 1998

In the Third Book Galiot returns to the fight with a host thrice as large as his former one As before, Gawain distinguishes himself in the first encounter, but is at length so "evil wounded" that he was "the worse thereof evermore" (l 2706) In the second combat, the black knight utterly eclipses the red knight, and the last thousand (extant) lines of the poem are almost wholly occupied with a description of his wonderful prowess At the point where the extant portion of the poem ceases, the author would appear to be just warming with his subject, and to be preparing for greater efforts

In continuance of the outline of the story, I may add that the French text¹ informs us how, after being several times remounted by Galiot, and finding himself with every fresh horse quite as fresh as he was at the beginning of the battle, the black knight attempted, as evening fell, to make his way back to Melyhalt secretly Galiot, however, having determined not to lose sight of him, follows and confronts him, and earnestly requests his company to supper, and that he will lodge in his tent that night After a little hesitation, Lancelot accepts the invitation, and Galiot entertains him with the utmost respect and flattery, providing for him a most excellent supper and a bed larger than any of the rest Lancelot, though naturally somewhat wearied, passes a rather restless night, and talks a good deal in his sleep Next day Galiot prays him to stay longer, and he consents on condition that a boon may be granted him, which is immediately acceded to without further question He then requests Galiot to submit himself to Arthur, and to confess himself vanquished, a demand which so amazes that chieftain that he at first refuses, yet succeeds in persuading Lancelot to remain with him a little longer The day after, preparations are made for another battle, on which occasion Lancelot wears Galiot's armour, and is at first mistaken for him, till Sir Gawain's acute vision detects that the armour

¹ See Appendix

written in the Lowland Scottish dialect (the whole tone of the poem going to prove this), as shewn by the use of *ch* for *gh*, as in *bricht* for *bright*, (unless this be wholly due to the scribe), by the occurrence of plurals in -*s*, of verbal preterites and passive participles in -*it*, and of words peculiarly Scottish, such as *syne* (afterwards), *anely* (only), *laif* (remainder), *oftsyss* (oft-times), etc. Moreover, the Northern *t* is clearly indicated by the occurrence of such dissyllables as *gai-t*, 2777, *la-g*, 2845, *fir-st*, 2958, 3075, with which compare the significant spellings *harmful*, 1945, and *furde*, 2583. But, on the other hand, it would appear as if either the author or the copyist had no great regard for pure dialect, and continually introduces Southern and Midland forms, mixing them together in an indiscriminate and very unusual manner. We find, for example, in line 1765,

“Beith larg and iſſis fīcly of thi thing,”

the Scottish form *iſſis* (give) and the Southern *beith* in close conjunction, and we find no less than six or seven forms of the plural of the past tense of the verb “to be,” as, for example, *war* (3136), *wer* (818), *ware* (825), *waren* (3301), *veryng* (2971), *uaryng* (443), etc. If we could suppose that the scribe was not himself a Scotchman, we might in some measure account for such a result, but the supposition is altogether untenable, as the peculiar character of the hand-writing (resembling that found, not in English, but in French MSS) decides it to be certainly Scottish, as is also evident from the occurrence, in the same hand-writing, of a Scotticised version of Chaucer’s “Flee from the press”

The best that can be done is to collect a few instances of peculiarities

1. The broad Northumbrian forms *a*, *ane*, *baith*, *fia*, *ga*, *haill*, *hame*, *haw*, *law*, *sa*, *wat*, although occasionally retained, are also at times changed into *o*, *one*, *boith*, *fio*, *go*, *holl*, *hom*, *know*,

low, so, and uot Thus, at the end of l. 3246, we find *haill*, which could not have been altered without destroying the rime, but in l. 3078, we find it changed, in the middle of the line, into *holl*. In l. 3406, we find *sa*, but only three lines further on we find *so* twice.

So, too, we not only find *tane* (taken), *gans* (goes), but also the forms *tone* and *go³*. See lines 1071, 1073.

2 The true plural form of the verb is shewn by lines 203, 204,

“Of quhois fame and worschipful dedis
Clerkis into diuers^b bukis *redis*,”

where alteration would have ruined the rime utterly, and the same termination (-*is*) is correctly used in the imperative mood, as,

———“fo *griffis* ws delay” (l. 463),

“And of thi wordis *biers* trew and stable” (l. 1671), but the termination -*ith* is continually finding its way into the poem, even as early as in the fourth line,

“*Uprisith* arly in his fyre chare ,”

and in the imperative mood also, as,

“*Remembriθ* now it stondith one the poynt” (l. 797)

The most singular point of all, however, is this—that, not content with changing -*is* into -*ith* in the 3rd person singular, the scribe has done the same even in the 2nd person, thus producing words which belong to no pure example of any distinct dialect. Observe the following lines —

“O woful wrech, that *levis* in to were !
To schew the thus the god of loue me sent,
That of thi seruice no thing is content,
For in his court yhoue [= thou] *lewirth* in disspar,
And vilfully *sustenis* al thi care,
And *schapith* no thinge of thine awn remedē,
Bot *clepit* ay and *ryith* apone dede,” etc (ll. 84 90)

Here *levis* is altered into *lewirth*, not only unnecessarily, but quite wrongly. For similar mistakes, see ll. 1019, 1369, 1384,

2203 For examples of correct usage, see ll 1024, 1387, 1796, 2200, 2201

3 But the terminations which are used in the most confused manner of all are *-en*, *-yne*, and *-ing* or *-yng*. Thus we find the non-Scottish infinitives, *telen* (494), *makine* (191), the constant substitution of *-ing* for *-and* in the present participle,¹ a confusion between the past participial ending *-ne* (more correctly *-yn*), and the present ending *-and*, thus producing such forms as *thynke* (34), and *besichyne* (418), and also a confusion between *-ing* and the past participial ending *-en*, as *fundyng* for *funden* (465), *fallyng* for *fallen* (1217, 1322, 3267), *suellyng* for *swollen* (1222), and *halding* for *halden* (2259). We even find *-ing* in the infinitive mood, as in *auysing* (424), *viting* (to know, 410), *smyting* (1326), *warnnyng* (1035), *passing* (2148), *scheuring* (2736), etc., and, lastly, it occurs in the plural of the indicative present, instead of the Midland *-en*, as in *passing* (1166), *biding* (2670), and *leiyng* (3304).²

It may safely be concluded, however, that the frequent occurrence of non-Scottish infinitives must not be attributed to the copyist, since they are probably due rather to the author, for in such a line as

“Of his desir to viting the sentens” (l. 410),

the termination *-ing* is required to complete the rhythm of the line

In the same way we must account for the presence of the prefix *i-*, as in the line

“Quharwith that al the gardinge was I clede” (l. 50)

¹ We find the true forms occasionally, as *obersand* (641), *plesand* (1731), *thynhand* (2178), *prekand* (3089), and *fechtand* (3127). Compare the form *seriand* (122).

² “The Scottish pronunciation of *ing* was already, as it still is, *een*, and the writer, knowing that the correct spelling of *dwellin*, for example, was *dweeling*, fancied also that *fallen*, *halden* (Sc. *fallyn*, *haldyn*) were *fallyng*, *haldyng*. Lyndesay and Gawain Douglas often do the same. Compare *gardinge* (l. 50), *larting* (l. 327). —J. A. H. Murray.

This prefix never occurs in vernacular Scottish, but we may readily suppose that this and other numerous Southern forms of words are due (as in Gawain Douglas and Lyndesay) to the author's familiarity with Chaucer's poems, as evinced by the similarity of the rhythm to Chaucer's, and by the close resemblance of several passages. Compare, for instance, the first seventy lines of the Prologue with the opening passages of "The Flower and the Leaf," and "The Complaint of the Black Knight," and see notes to ll 432, 1608. Indeed, this seems to be the only satisfactory way of accounting for the various peculiarities with which the poem abounds.

Mr J A H Murray, in his remarks printed in the preface to Mr Lumby's edition of "Early Scottish Verse," comes to a similar conclusion, and I here quote his words for the reader's convenience and information. "There is no reason, however, to suspect the scribe of *wilfully* altering his original, indeed, the reverse appears manifest, from the fact that the 'Craft of Deyng' has not been assimilated in orthography to 'Ratis Raving,' but distinctly retains its more archaic character, while in 'Sir Lancelot,' edited by Mr Skeat for the Early English Text Society, from the handwriting of the same scribe, we have a language in its continual Anglicisms quite distinct from that of the pieces contained in this volume, of which the Scotch is as pure and unmixed as that of the contemporary Acts of Parliament. With regard to the remarkable transformation which the dialect has undergone in Sir Lancelot, there seems reason, therefore, to suppose that it was not due to the copyist of the present MS, but to a previous writer, if not to the author himself, who perhaps affected *southernism*, as was done a century later by Lyndesay and Knox, and other adherents of the English party in the Reformation movement. The Southern forms are certainly often shown by the rhyme to be original, and such a form as *tone* for *tane* = taken, is more likely to have been that of a Northerner trying to write

Southern, than of a Southern scribe, who knew that no such word existed in his dialect. The same may be said of the *th* in the second person singular. A Scotch writer, who observed that Chaucer said *he lyeth*, where he himself said *he lyes*, might be excused for supposing that he would also have said *thou lyveth* for the Northern *thow lyirs*, but we can hardly fancy a Southern copyist making the blunder¹.

4 We find not only the Northumbrian forms *sall* and *suld*, but also *shall*, *shalt*, and *shuld*.

5 As regards pronouns, we find the Scottish *scho* (she) in l 1169, but the usual form is *sche*. We find, too, not only the broad forms *thai*, *thau*, *thairn*, but also *ther* (sometimes *the*), *ther*, and *them*. As examples of forms of the relative pronoun, we may quote *who*, *quho*, *uhors*, *quhors* (whose), *quhom*, *quhome* (whom), *quhat*, *qchat* (what), and *uhilk*, *quhilk*, *quhuh*, *quich*, *urch* (which). *Wich* is used instead of *who* (l 387), and we also find *the urch*, or *the urch that*, similarly employed. The nominative *who* does not perhaps occur as a simple relative, but has the force of *whoso*, or *he who*, as *e g*, in l 1102, or else it is used interrogatively, as in l 1172.

6 Many other peculiarities occur, which it were tedious to discuss fully. It may suffice, perhaps, to note briefly these following. We find both the soft sound *ch*, as in *urch*, *sich*, and the hard sound *k*, as in *whilk*, *rehe* (reach), *stike* (stretch), etc., which are the true Northern forms.

Mo is used as well as *more*.

Tho occurs for *then* in l 3184, and for *the* in l 247.

At occurs as well as *that*, *atte* as well as *at the*, 627, 1055.

The short forms *ma* (make), *ta* (take), *sent* (sendeth), *siant* (standeth), are sometimes found, the two former being Northumbrian.

Has is used twice as a plural verb (ll 481, 496).¹

¹ "The plural in Scottish always ends in *s* after a noun or when the verb is separated from its pronoun, we still say *the men hes*, *the baruns sings*, *them*



ȝha (yes) occurs in l 2843, but we also meet with *ȝhis*, or *yis*, with reference to which Mr Morris writes —“The latter term was not much in favour with the people of the North. Even now *yes* sounds offensive to a Lancashire man ‘Hoo cou’d naw opp’n hur meawth t’ sey *eigh* (yea) or *now* (no), boh simpurt on sed *iss*, th’ dickons *iss* hur on *him* too —*Tim Bobbin*’” In fact, the distinction between *ȝha* and *ȝhis*, which I have pointed out in *William of Palerne* (Glossary, s v *ȝis*), viz., that *ȝha* merely assents, whilst *ȝhis* shews that the speaker has an opinion of his own, is in this poem observed. Thus, in l 2843, *ȝha* = “yes, I admit that I do,” but in l 514, *yis* = “yes, but you had better do so,” in l 1397, *ȝhis* = “yes, indeed I will,” and in l 3406, *ȝis* = “yes, but I cannot accept your answer”¹. The true distinction between *thou* and *ye* (*William of Palerne*, Pief p xl) is also generally observed. Thus the Green Bird, in the Prologue, considers the poet to be a fool, and calls him *thou*, but the clerks, in addressing Arthur (l 498) politely say *ye*. And again, Amytans, when rebuking Arthur, frequently calls him *thou*, without any ceremony Cf ll 659, 908, 921, 2839, &c.

As regards the vocabulary, we find that some Northumbrian terms have been employed, but others thrown aside. Thus, while we find the Northumbrian words *thr* (these), *traust* (trust), *newis* (neives, fists), *radour* (fear), etc., we do not, on the other hand, meet with the usual Scottish word *mirl*, but observe it to be supplanted by *dirk* (l 2471). So, again, *eke* is used in the sense of *also*, instead of being a verb, as more usual in Northern works. We may note, too, the occurrence of *frome* as well as *fra*, and the Scottish form *thyne-furth* (thenceforth) in l 2196.

¹ *at cums, not hare, sing, come* Notice the frequent use of *th* for *t*, as in l 497, *Presumyth* = *presumit*, presumed, it being presumed” — J A H Murray [Or, *presumyth* may be the pl imperative, as in *Remembrith* (l 797), already noticed — ED.]

¹ “This *ȝis* is the common form in the Scottish writers, though *ay* is largely the modern vernacular” — J A H Murray

The spelling is very various. We find even four forms of one word, as *cusynace*, *cusynece*, *cusynes*, *cusynes*, and, as examples of eccentric spelling, may be quoted *qsquynars* (squires, l 3204), whilst in l 3221 we find *squa*.

Both in the marginal abstract and in the notes I have chiefly aimed at removing minor difficulties by explaining sentences of which the construction is peculiar, and words which are disguised by the spelling. For the explanation of more uncommon words, recourse should be had to the Glossarial Index.

APPENDIX.

EXTRACTS FROM THE FRENCH ROMANCE OF “LANCELOT DU LAC”

As it seems impossible to do justice to the story of Lancelot without giving due attention to the famous French Romance, and since a portion of the French text is really necessary to complete even that fragment of it which the Scottish author proposed to write, the following extracts have been made with the view of shewing (1) the general outline of the earlier part of the story, (2) the method in which the Scottish author has expanded or altered his original, and (3) the completion of the story of the wars between Arthur and Galiot¹

I Headings of the chapters of the French Romance, from its commencement to the end of the wars with Galiot

[The commas are inserted by the present editor, and the expansions marked by italics]

¶ Cy commence la table du premier volume de la table ronde lancelot du lac

¶ Comment apres la mort de vterpandragon roy du royaume de logres, & apres la mort aramon, roy de la petite bretaigne, le roy claudas de la terre Descosse mena guerre contre le roy ban de benoic et le roy boort de gauues tant quil les desherita² de leurs terres Fueillet 1

Claudas king of Scotland de prives king Ban and king Boort of their lands

¹ The extracts are from the Paris edition of 1513, 3 vols folio, a copy of which is in the King's Library in the British Museum. There are also two other editions in the Museum, one in the Grenville Library, 3 vols. Paris, 1494, folio , the other in one folio volume, Paris, 1520 ² See II 1447 1449

XLV HEADS OF THE EARLY CHAPTERS OF THE FRENCH ROMANCE

Claudas besieges
Ban in the Castle
of Trible

King Ban, his
wife and his son
Lancelot repair
to the court of
Arthur

The Castle of
Trible is treach-
erously given up
to Claudas

King Ban dies of
grief and Lance-
lot is taken away
by the lady of the
lake

The two sisters
widows of kings
Ban and Boort
retreat to a mon-
astery

Miclin's love for
the lady of the
lake
Sir Farien se-
cretly nourishes
the two sons of
kin, Boort, and
is made seneschal
to king Claudas

Claudas accuses
Sir Farien of
treason

Claudas, in dis-
guise visits Ar-
thur's court

The lady of the
lake informs
Lancelot that he
is a king's son

¶ Comment le roy claudas assiegea le chasteau de trible auquel estoit le roy ban de benoic, et comment ilz palementrent ensemble f

¶ Comment le roy ban de benoic, accompagne de sa femme et de son filz lancelot, avecques vng seul escuyei, se partirent du chasteau de trible pour aller querri secours deueis le roy artus a la grant bretaigne Fueillet

¶ Comment apres ce que le roy ban fut party de son chasteau de trible, le seneschal a qui il auoit baillé la garde trahit ledit chasteau, et le liura es mains du roy claudas Fueillet

¶ Comment le rooy ban mourut de dueil quant il veit son chasteau ardon et brouyr Et comment la dame du lac emporta son filz lancelot Fueillet

¶ Comment la royne helaine, apres que le rooy fut mort et elle eut perdu son filz, se rendit nonnain en labbeye du monstier royal Fueillet

¶ Comment le rooy de gauues mourut | & comment la Royne sa femme, pour priour de claudas, sen partit de son chasteau pour aller au monstier royal, ou sa seur estoit rendue et comment ses enfans Lyonnelle et Boort luy furent ostez Fueillet

¶ Comment la royne de Gauues, apres que son seigneur fut mort et que elle eut peidu ses deux enfans, se vint rendre au monastere ou estoit sa seur la royne de benoic Fueillet

¶ Comment miclin fut engendre du dyable Et com-
ment il fut amoureux de la dame du lac Fueillet vii

¶ Comment le cheualier farien, qui auoit tollu a la royne de Gauues ses deux enfans, les emporta en sa maison | et les feist nourrir vne espace de temps Et comment le roy claudas fut amoureux de la femme du dict Farien | et porce le fist son seneschal Fueillet viii

¶ Comment le roy claudas fist appellei son cheualier farien de trahison par ladmonnestement de sa femme, disant quil gardoit les deux enfans du roy boort de gauunes Fueillet

¶ comment le roy claudas en maniere de cheualier estrange, se partit du royaume de gauues pour aller en la grant bretaigne a la court du roy artus pour veoir sa puissance & son gouernement Fueillet

¶ Comment la dame du lac bailla a lancelot vng maistre pour linstruyre comme il appartenoit a filz de roy Fueillet

¶ Comment la royne helaine alloit faire chascun iouai

son duel au lieu ou son seigneur mourut | et de la
alloit au lac ou elle perdit son filz **Fueillet** **xv**

¶ Comment le bon Relhieux qui auoit dit nouuelles
a la royne helaine de son filz lancelot, print conge de
elle, et sen vint au roy artus en la grant bretaigne
Fueillet **xvi**

¶ Comment la dame du lac enuoya sa damoyselle a
la court du roy claudas, pour delyurer les deux enfans
au roy boort que claudas tenoit en prison **Fueillet** **xvii**

The lady of the
lake seeks to de-
liver the sons of
king Boot

¶ Comment farien, seneschal du roy claudas par le
commandement de son seigneur, alla querir en prison
les deux filz au roy de Gauues **Fueillet** **xviii**

¶ Comment les deux enfans au roy de gauues
blecerent le roy claudas, & occirent dorin son filz | et
comment la damoyselle du lac les emmena en semblance
de deux leuriers **Fueillet** **xix**

Lyonnell and
Boort wound
king Cladas
and slay his son
Dorin

¶ De la grant ioye et du grant honneur que la dame
du lac fist aux deux enfans quant elle les veit en sa
maison **Fueillet** **xx**

¶ Comment le roy claudas mena tres grant duel
pour la mort de dorin son filz que boort auoit occis
Fueillet **xx**

Cladas bewa ls
his son s death

¶ Comment farien et le peuple de la cyte de gauues
sesmeurent contie le roy claudas a cause que il voulloit
faire mourir les deux filz au roy boort de gauues
Fueillet **xxi**

¶ Comment le roy claudas se partit de gauues | et
comment ceulx dudit lieu le vouloient occire, se neust
este farien le bon cheualier **f** **xxii**

Farien saves
Cladas life

¶ Comment le roy claudas se defendit vaillamment
contre ceulx de Gauues qui le vouloyent occire **Fueil-
let** **xxv**

¶ Comment lyonnel et boort perdirent le boire et le
manger pource quilz ne scauoyent nouuelles de leur
maistres | lesquelz estoient demourez avec le roy claudas
| & comment la dame du lac enuoya vne siegne damoy-
selle a gauues pour les amener **Fueillet** **xxvii**

I eonce and Lam
begues go to seek
Lyonnell and
Boort

¶ Comment, par le conseil des barons de gauues
leonce & lambegues sen allerent auecques la damoyselle
pour veoir leurs seigneurs lyonne et boort **Fueillet** **xxviii**

¶ Comment la dame du lac sen retourna apres ce
quelle eut monstre a leonce et a lambegues les enfans du
roy de gauues leurs seigneurs, et comment lesditz che-
ualiers sen retournerent a gauues **Fueillet** **xxix**

¶ Comment le roy claudas retourna a gauues, pour
soy venger de la honte quon lui auoit faicte, et poui la
mort de son filz **Fueil** **xxx**

Cladas medi-
tates ievenge

XXVI HEADS OF THE TWENTY-CHAPTRS OF THE FRENCH ROMANCE

- ¶ Comment l'appointment fut fait entre le roy claudas et les barons, pu le moyen de faire et lam begues son nepueu Fueillet xxxiii
Death of Farien
- ¶ Comment faire | sa femme, et son nepueu lambegues sen partirent pour aller veoir lyonnel et booit, qui estoient au lac | & comment farien mourut Fueillet xxxv
- The widow of king Boort sees her children and Lancelot in a vision and dies
Arthur holds a tournament, and Bannin, son of king Ban, is the victor
- ¶ Comment les deux royes menoient vngue vie au monstier roy al | et comment celle de gauues veit ces deux enfans & lancelot en vision | et comment elle trespasse de ce siecle Fueillet xxxv
- The lady of the lake sends Lance lot to Arthur to be knighted, and provides for him white armour
Of the wounded knight who came to Arthur's court
- ¶ Comment le roy artus assembla le tour de pasques tous ses barons, & tint grant court a karahez, et comment bannin le filleul au Roy ban emporta le pris du behourdy celluy iouy Fueillet xxxvi
- ¶ Comment la dame du lac se pourpensa de mener lancelot au roy artus pour le faire cheualier,¹ et elle luy bulla armes blanches, et paistit du lac a tout quarante cheualliers pour le contoyer Fueillet xxxvii
- Lancelot is knighted.
- ¶ Comment vng cheualier nauie, lequel auoit vne espee fichee en la teste et deux trioncos de lance parmy le corps,² vint a la court du roy artus | et comment la dame du lac le mena devant le roy artus, et luy prya quil le fist cheualier Fueillet xxxix
- ¶ Comment messire vrain, a qui le roy Artus auoit recommande lancelot, allia faire sa requeste audit roy artus, que le lendemain il fist ledit lancelot cheualier, et comment ledit lancelot deferra le cheualier naure³ Fueillet xli
- How the white knight defended the lady of No hault, and won the battle for her
How Lancelot conquered the Sorrowful Castle
- ¶ Comment la dame de noehault⁴ envoia deuers le roy artus, luy supplier quil luy envoyst secours contre le Roy de norhombellande qui luy menoit guerre Et comment Lancelot request au roy artus quil luy donnast congne dy aller | & il luy octroya Fueillet xlii
- ¶ Comment le nouveau cheualier aux armes blanches vainquit la bataille pour la dame de noehault Fueillet xliii
- How Arthur hears of it, and sends Gawain to see if it is true
How Lancelot conquered the Sorrowful Castle
- ¶ Comment lancelot apres ce quil se fut party de la dame de noehault, se combatit avec vng cheualier qui auoit mouille Fueillet xlv
- ¶ Comment lancelot conquist vaillamment par sa force et proesse le chasteau de la douloureuse garde que nul autre ne pouoit conquerre⁵ Fueillet xlv
- ¶ Comment les nouvelles vindrent au roy artus que la douloureuse garde estoit conquise par la cheualier

¹ Line 223

² Lines 237 245

³ Lines 249 252

⁴ Line 255

⁵ Lines 257 259

aux armes blanches | Et le ioy y enuoya messire gauuain
pour en scauoir la verite Fueillet xlviii

¶ Comment messire Gauuain fut mys en prison | et
comment le roy et la royne entrerent en la premiere
porte de la | et la veient des tumbes ou il y auoit
escript que monseigneur gauuain estoit mort, et plu-
sieures autres cheualiers Fueillet xlxi

¶ Comment vne damoyselle de lhostel de la dame
du lac feist assauoir au cheualier blanc que monseig-
neur gauuain & ses compaignons estoient emprisonnez
par celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse
garde Fueillet 1

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier se combatit encontre
celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde,
qui tenoit en prison messire gauuain et ses compaignons¹
Fueillet 1

¶ Comment le cheualier blanc emmena le cheualier
conquis en vng hermitaige et comment ledit cheualier
conquis lui rendit audit hermitage gauuain & ses com-
paignons² Fueillet li

¶ Comment messire gauuain et ses compaignons sen-
vindrent par deuers le roy artus qui estoit a la dou-
loureuse garde | Et comment le roy et la royne furent
ioyeulx quant ilz les virent Fueillet lii

¶ Comment le cheualier blanc retourna a labbaye
ou il auoit laisse ses escuyers | et comment il sceut las-
semblee qui deuoit estre entre le roy artus et le roy
doultre les marches, & comment il conquist le cheualier
qui disoit mieulx aymer le cheualier qui auoit naure que
celluy qui lauoit este² Fueillet liii

¶ Comment messire gauuain se mist en queste pour
trouuer le blanc cheualier³ | Et comment la meslee
dentre les gens au roy des cent cheualiers et les gens de
la dame de noehault fut appaisee Fueillet lv

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier vainquit lassemblee
dentre les deux roys | et comment il fut naure du roy
des cent cheualiers Fueillet lvi

¶ Comment apres que le cheualier qui auoit gange
le tournoyement dentre le roy doultre les marches sen-
fut alle, le roy artus & la royne geniere se partirent
pour aller en leurs pays Fueillet lvii

¶ Comment messire gauuain se combatit a brehain-
sans pitie, et le rua par terre et comment apres ilz sen-
allerent a la douloureuse garde & comment les deux
pucelles que messire Gauuain menoit lui furent tollues
Fueillet lviii

Gawain is impris-
oned, and sup-
posed to be dead

Lancelot hears of
Gawain's impris-
onment

and delivers him
and his com-
panions

Gawain returns
to Arthur and his
Queen at Dou-
loureuse Garde

Lancelot hears of
the war to come
between Arthur
and Gahot

Gawain goes to
seek the white
knight

who is wounded
in the battle
against Gahot by
the king of a
hundred knights

Arthur and
Queen Genure
return home

¹ Lines 263, 4

² See ll 244, 5

³ Line 267

XVIII HEADS OF THE EARLY CHAPTERS OF THE FRENCH ROMANCE

Lancelot ends
the adventures of
the ' Sorowiuil
Castle'

Lancelot is again
victorious in the
combat between
Arthur and
Galot

Gawain returns
to Arthur's court

Arthur's evil
dreams

Galot defies Ar-
thur

Lancelot is as-
sailed by forty
knights, and im-
prisoned by the
lady of Meli, hault

Lancelot released
from prison is
again victorious
against Galot

Arthur is re-
proved by Amy-
tins and Galot
proposes a truce
for a year

Lancelot returns
to the lady of
Melyhault

Gawain with
39 comrades
departs to seek
the red knight

The lady of
Melyhault accepts
Lancelot's ran-
som

¶ Comment lancelot puint congne de son mme | et
comment il mist a fin les iduentures de la douloureuse
garde Fueillet

ix

¶ Comment messire gauuain recognua les deux pucel-
les qui luy auoyent este tollues, Et comment lancelot
vainquit la seconde assemblee dentre le roy artus & le
roy doulitre les marches Fueillet

lxii

¶ Comment messire gauuain retourna a la court du
roy artus apres la seconde assemblee dentre le roy artus
& le roy doulitre les marches, et comment lancelot vain-
quit le cheuillier qui gardoit le gue Fueillet

lxiii

[Here begins the Scotch Translatiōn]

¶ Comment le roy Artus songea plusieurs songes | et
apres manda tous les suges clercs de sou royaule pour
en scauoir la signifiance¹ Fueillet

lxiiii

¶ Comment le roy doulitre les marches, nomme gal-
lehaul, enuoya deffier le roy artus² | et comment Lan-
celot occist deur geans empies kamalot³ Fueillet

lxv

¶ Comment lancelot occist vng cheualier qui disoit
moins aymez le cheualier nunc que celluy qui lauoit
naure⁴ | et comment il fut assuilly de xl cheualiers, et
mys en prison de la dame de mallehault⁵ Fueillet

lxviii

¶ Comment gillehault assembla au roy artus vng
iour durant que lancelot estoit en prison⁶ | et comment
le lendemain lancelot fut delivre de prison⁷ | et vainquit
lassemblee dentre les deux roys⁸ Fueillet

lxvii

¶ Comment le roy artus fut repuins de ses vices, et
moult bien conseille par vng cheualier qui surunt en
son ost⁹ | Et comment gallchault donna tresues au roy
Artus rusques a vng an¹⁰ Fueillet

lxix

¶ Comment lancelot, apies ce quil eut vaincu las-
semblee, retourna en la prison de la dame de malle
hault¹¹ | et comment elle le congneut, a son cheual et
par les playes quil auoit, que cestoit celluy qui auoit
vaincu lassemblee¹² Fueillet

lxxi

¶ Comment messire gauuain, soy quarantiesme de
compagnons, se mist en queste pour trouuer le cheuallier
qui auoit poite lescu vermeil a lassemblee dentre le
roy artus et Gallehault¹³ Fueillet

lxiiii

¶ Comment la dame de mallehault mist a rancen le
cheuallier quelle tenoit en prison, et le laissa aller quant
elle veit quelle ne peult scauoir son nom¹⁴ fu

lxviii

¹ Lines 363-527

² Lines 540 592

³ Line 280

⁴ Lines 233 252

⁵ Lines 281 292

⁶ Lines 634 894

⁷ Lines 895 974

⁸ Lines 975 1138

⁹ Lines 1275 2180

¹⁰ Lines 1543 1584

¹¹ Lines 1139 1152

¹² Lines 1181 1274

¹³ Lines 2161 2256

¹⁴ Lines 2847 2442

¶ Comment messire gauuain et ses compaignons re
tournerent de leur queste¹ | et comment apres les treues
fallies galehault vint assembler contre le roy artus, &
tous ses gens en furent moult troublez² fu lxxiii

The truce ended
Gahot again at-
tacks Arthur

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheuallier aux noires
armes,³ & fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en
son ost, dont le roy artus et tous ses gens en furent
moult troublez Fueillet lxxvii

Gahot gains over
the black knigt

¶ Comment lancelot par sa prouesse conquist tout,
et fist tant que gallehault crya mercy au roy artus
fu lxxix

Lancelot induces
Gahot to submit
to Arthur

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne vit lance-
lot | & comment ilz se arraisonnerent ensemble fu lxxxii

The Queen and
Lancelot meet

¶ Comment la royne congneut lancelot apres ce
quil eut longuement parle a elle, & quil lui eut compte
de ses aduentures & comment la premiere acoitance
fut faictre entre la royne & lancelot par le moyen de
galehault fu lxxxii

The Queen knows
Lancelot from his
adventures that
he tells her

¶ Comment la premiere acoitance fut faictre de
galehault & de la dame de malehault par le moyen
de la royne de logres, & comme[nt] lancelot & gale-
hault sen alloyent esbatre & deuiser auecques leurs
dames fu lxxxiiii

Gahot becomes
acquainted with
the lady of Mely
holt

II The Chapter of the French romance from which the
translator has taken the beginning of his First Book is here
given, in order to shew in what manner he has treated his
original It begins at Fol lxiia, col 1

Comment le roy artus songea plusieurs songes, et
apres manda tous les sages clercz de son
royaulme pour en scauoir la signifiance

Arthur's evil
dreams

O R dit le compte que le roy artus auoit longue-
ment seiourne a cardueil Et pource ny auenoit
mie grandement de aduentures, il ennuya moult aux
compaignons du Roy de ce quilz auoient si longuement
seiourne, & ne veoient riens de ce quilz souloyent veoir
Principalement keu le seneschal en fut trop ennuye Et
en parloit moult souuent, et disoyt deuant le roy que
trop estoit ce seiour ennuyeulx, & trop auoit dure Le
roy lui demande "Keu | que vouldriez vous que nous
feissions ?" "Certes," fait keu, "je conseilleroye que
nous allussions a kamalot | car la cite est plus aduan-

King Arthur be-
ing at Cardueil,

his knights are
annoyed at meet-
ing with no ad-
ventures

Sir Kay counsels
that they should
go to Camelot

¹ Lines 2504 2530 ² Lines 2531 3268

³ Lines 3843 3487

XXX THE ORIGINAL OF BOOK I OF THE SCOTCH TRANSLATION

The king con-
sents to go,

but the same
night dreams
that all his hair
falls off which
delays him
The third night
after he dreams
that all his fin-
gers fall off ex-
cept his thumbs

Again that all
his toes fall off
except his great
toes

The Queen and
his chaplain dis-
cuss the dreams

but Arthur sends
for his bishops,
archishops, and
their wisest
clerks,

whom he impris-
ons till they
shall tell him
what the dreams
mean

After trying for
nine days, they
fail

They twice ob-
tain a delay of
three days

The king threat-
ens to slay them

Five are to be
burnt and five
hung

tureuse que vous ayez | et la nous verrions souuent et
ornions choses de merueilles que nous ne voyons pas icy
Nous auons seiourne icy plus de deux moys, et
onques ne y veismes gueres de choses aduenir ” “Or
alons donc,” fait le royst, “a Kamalot, puis que vous le
conseillez ” Lendemain deust paitir le royst | mais la
nuyet luy aduint vne merueilleuse aduenture Il songa
que tous les cheueux de sa teste cheoient, et tous les
poilz de sa barbe, dont il fut moult espouente Et par
ce demoura encores en la ville La tierce nuyt apres il
songa que il luy estoit aduis que tous les dois luy
cheoient fors les poulices, & lois fut plus esbahy que
deuant

A Lautre nuyet songer il que tous les ortelz des
piedz luy cheoient fors les poulices de ce fut si
trouble que plus ne pult “Sire,” fait son chappelain
a qui il lauoit dit, “ne vous chaille | car songes ne sont
pas a croire,” le royst le dit a la royne, et elle respond
tout aussi que luy moint fut son chappelain “En
verite,” dist il, “je ne lui sei v pas la chose ainsi” | il
fait mander ses enques et archevesques qniz soient a
luy au ix iour ensuyuant a kamalot, & quiz amaiment
avec eux tous les plus sages clerenz quils pourroient
auoir et trouuer A tant se put de carduel & sen va
par les chasteaulx et par les citez | tant que au neuf
mesme iour est venu a kamalot, et aussi sont venus les
clerenz du pays Il leur demande conseil de son songe,
et ilz elisent dix des plus sages le royst les fist bien
enserrer, et dist que iamais nen sortiroient de prison
deuant quiz luy atroient dit la signification de son songe
Ilz espiouueient la force de leur sciencs par neuf iours,
et puis vindrent au royst, & dirent quiz nauoient riens
trouue “Ainsi maist dieu,” dit le royst, “ja ainsi
neschapperez ” Et ils demandent respit jusques au
troisiesme iour ensuyuant, et il leur donne Les iii
iours passez, ilz reuennent deuant le royst, et dirent que
ilz ne peuent riens trouuer | et demandent encores autre
delay | et ilz ont Et de rechief vindrent pour de-
mander aultres troyis iours de dilacion, ainsi que le royst
auoit songe de tierce nuyt en tierce nuyt “Oi sachez,”
faut le royst, “que iamais plus nen aurez ” Quant vint
au tiers iour ilz dirent quiz nauoient rien trouue, “ce
ne vault rien,” fait le royst, “je vous feray tous destruire
se vous ne me dictez la verite,” et ils dirent “Sue
nous ne vous en scairions que dire ” Lors se pense le
roy quil leur fera paour de mort Il fait fair vng grant
feu, & commanda en leurs presences que les v y fus-

sent mis, et que les autres cinq soyent penduz | mais
prueement deffent a ses baillifz quiz ne les menassent
que jusques a la paour de mourir. Quant les cinq qui
furent menez aux fourches euerent les cordes entour
leurs colz, ils eurent paour de mourir, et dirent, que se
les autres cinq le vouloyent dire, ilz le duoyent. La
nouuelle vint au v que len menoit arde | et ilz dirent
que, se les autres le vouloyent dire, ils le diroyent | ils
furent amenez ensemble devant le roy, et les plus sages
dirent | "sire, nous vous dirons ce que nous auons
trouue | mais nous ne vouldrions mie que vous nous
tenissiez a menteurs se il ne aduenoit | car nous vould
rions bien quil nen fust rien, et voulons, comment quil
en aduengne, que vous nous assurez que la mal ne
nous en adwendra , et il leur promet Lors dist lung
de eux qui pour tous parla "Sire, sachez que ceste
terre et tout honneur vous conuendra perdre et ceulx
en qui plus vous fiez vous fauldront, telle est la sub
stance et signification de voz songes" De ceste chose fut
le roy moult effraye, "Or me dictes," fait il, "sil est
chose qui men peult garantir" "Certes," fait le
maistre, nous auons veu une chose | Mais cest si grande
merveille que on ne le pourroyt penser, et ne la vous
osons dire" "Dictes," fait il, "seurement | car pis ne
me pouez vous dire que vous mauez dit" "Sire, riens
ne vous peult garder de perdre tout honneur terrien fors
le lyon sauluage, et le mire sans medecine, par le con
seil de la fleur, & se nous semble estre si grande folie
que nous ne losions dire | Car lyon sauluage ne y peult
estre, ne mire sans medecine | ne fleur qui parlant | le
roy est moult entreprins de ceste chose mais plus en
fait belle chiere que le cuer ne luy apporte Ung iour
alla le roy chasser au boys bien matin | et mena avec
luy messire gauuain, keu le seneschal, et ceulx qui lui
pleust Si laisse icy le compte a parler de luy, et
retourne a parler du cheualier dont messire Gauuain
aporta le nom en court

Qvant¹ le cheualier qui lassemblee auoyt vaincu
se partast de la ou il se combatist a son hoste,
il erra toute iour sans autre aduanture trouuer Il se
logea la nuyt chiez une veufue dame a lyssue dune
forest a cinq lieues anglechus pres de kamelot Le
cheualier se leua matin, et erra, luy et ses escuyers et sa
damoyseille, tant quil encontra vng escuyer "Varlet,"
fait il, "scez tu nulles nouuelles?" "Ouy," fait il,

¹ There is no trace of the rest of this chapter in the Scottish poem

The five who are
to be hung hav
ing the cords
round their necks
offer to speak out

They stipulate
not to be held as
liars if their inter
pretations fail

The dreams mean
that he will lose
his land and his
honour

Arthur as if
anything can
avert such fate

He is told, "no
thing except the
savage lion and
the leech without
medicine by help
of the counsel of
the flower

Arthur goes to
the chase

Lancelot on his
wanderings

He meets an
esquire,
and asks him
'what news?'

"The queen,
he says "is at
Camelot
Iancelot goes on
till he sees a large
house a lady and
her damsel"

He regards her
fixedly

An armed knight,
passing asks him
what he is regard-
ing so closely

He replies that
he looks at what
pleases him
The knight asks
if he knows who
the lady is,

and he replies
that he knows it
is the queen

The stranger
takes Lancelot
home to lodge
with him,

and he is well
entertained

"ma dame la royne est ny pres a kamalot" "quelle
royne" fait il "Le femme au roy artus," iut lescuyer
Le cheuillier sen part, et chcuanche tant quil treuve
vne maison forte, et voit vne dame en son suicot, qui
regardoit les piez et la foyet | & auoit avec elle vne
dimoiselle Le cheuillier se arreste, et regarde la dame
moult longuement tant quil oublie tout autre chose
Et maintenant passa vng cheuillier arme de toutes
armes, qui luy dist "Sire cheuillier, que attendez
vous ?" et celluy ne respond mot | car il ne li pas ouy
Et le cheuallier le boutte, et luy demande quil regarde
"Je regarde," fut il, "ce que me plust Et vous nestes
mie courtois, qui de mon pensci me avez iecte" "Par
la foy que vous deuez a dieu," fait le cheuallier estrange,
scauez vous bien qui la dame est que vous regardez?"
"Je le cuyde bien scuoir," fut le bon cheuallier "Et
qui este elle," fait lautie "Cest ma dame la royne"
"Si maist dieu, estrangement la congois sez, deables
vous font bien regudei d'uns" "Pourquoy," fait il
"Pource que vous ne me oseiez suivre devant la
Royne la ou le yroye" "Certes," iut le bon cheuallier,
"se vous osiez aller la ou le vous oseray suur,
vous aurez passer des couruage tous les plus grans oseurs
qui onques furent" A tant sen part le cheuallier Et
le bon cheuallier va apres Et quant ilz ont vne piece
alle, l'autre luy dist, "vous he[r]bergerez ennuyt avec
moy, et le matin ie vous meneray la ou le vous diz," et
le bon cheuallier luy demande sil conuient ainsi faire
"Oy" | fait il Et il dist que donc lottroyeia il Il
geut la nuyt chez le cheuallier sur la riuerie de kamalot,
et fut moult bien herberge, et sa pucelle | et ses escuyers

III Our last extract will shew exactly where the Scottish
poem suddenly ceases, and how the story was probably con-
tinued For the latter purpose, four chapters of the French
Romance are added beyond the point where the Scotch ends,
and it is possible (judging from lines 306-312 of the Pro-
logue) that the author did not intend to go very much further
The passage begins, in the French copy, at Fol lxxvii b, col
1, and, in the Scotch poem, at I 3427

Galiot gives
Lancelot his own
horse

Lors descent de son cheual, et la baille au cheuallier
Et celluy si y monte sans arrest Et galleault monta
sur vng autre, et vient a son conroy | Si prent avec

soy les dix mille, et dit qulz voisent assemblier deuant,
 "et vous," fait il au roy vend, "viendres apres, si ne
 assemblerez mie si tost comme ceulx cy seront assem-
 blez | mais quant les derrains de ceulx de dela seront
 venus, vous assemblerez, & moy mesmes vous iray
 querir" A tant amaine les dix mille pour assemblier,¹
 Et quant il fut entre en la bataille il fist sonner ses
 busines tant que tout en retentissoit² Quant le noir
 cheualier les ouyt veniu, si luy sembla que grant effort
 de gens eut la, si se retrait vng pou veis les siens, et les
 appella entour luy, & leur dist "Seigneurs, vous estes
 tous amys du roy Or y pema comment vous le ferez"³
 Et messire yuain, qui les vit venir, dist a ses gens,
 "Or soves tous asseurs que nous ne perdrons au iourd-
 huy par force de gens"⁴ Et ce disoit il pour ce quil
 coudoit que les gens gallehault fussent tous venus⁵

Qvant les x m de gallehault sassemblerent, si
 fut grande la noise, et moult en abbaten a
 leur venir | mais quant messire yuain vint, si reconforta
 moult les gens du roy artus | et tous les fuyans re
 tournezt avec luy Et gallehault sen va arriere a son
 conroy, et commande qulz cheuauchent fermement | et
 qulz se frappent es gens du roy artus⁶ de telle maniere⁷
 que nul dentreul ne demeure a cheual "Vous estes
 tous frays Or y perra comment vous le ferez" A
 tant cheuauchent les conroys deuers leurs gens, Car ilz
 auoyent ia du pire Et quant le conroy de Gallehault
 fut venu, si ch'nga moult laffaire | Car moult y auoyt
 grant effort de gens Et fut a leur venue le cheualier
 noir mis a terre⁸ Et aussi les six compaignons qui
 toute iour auoyent este pres de luy⁹ Lors vint galle-
 hault, qui le remonta sur le cheual mesmes ou son corps
 seoit¹⁰ Et si tost comme il fut monte, il sen reuint a la
 meslee aussi frays comme il auoit le iour este Et
 quant il vint aux coups donner, tous ceulx qui le voyoient
 sen esmerueilloyent, Ainsi dura la bataille rusques a la
 nuyt Et quant il vint au soir ilz se departiuent | et
 toutesfoys les gens du roy Artus en euent du meilleur
 Le bon cheualier se departit de lost le plus coyeument
 quil peut,¹¹ et sen alla par vng chemin entre les prestz
 et vng tertre, et cuya que nul ne le veist | mais Galle-

¹ Line 3432² Lines 3435 3440³ Lines 3441 3476⁴* Lines 3477 3480⁵ Lines 3481 3484⁶ Lines 3485, 6⁷ Line 3487 and last⁸ Compare lines 3365 3368⁹ Lines 3369, 70¹⁰ Compare lines 3391 3426¹¹ Compare line 1140

but is followed
by Galiot,

who plays him
to lodge with him
for that night

Lancelot at first
refuses till Galiot
agrees to do what
ever Lancelot
may require of
him,

and promises to
entertain him
sumptuously,
whereupon they
return together
to Galiot's camp

Gawain seeing
Lancelot with
Galiot,

tells the Queen
that now they
are all lost

and swoons away
more than three
times

hault sen puint tres bien gude, et picqua tant son cheual qui luy fut au deuant pur vne adesse, et le vint rencontrer au pied du tente. Si le salut, et dit 'que dieu le conduit'. Et reluy le regarda en trauers, et luy a un moult grint peine rendu son silut "Bel amy," fait galehault, "qui estes vous?" "Sire," fait il, "je suis vng cheualier, ce pouez vous veou?" "Cortes," fait galehault, "cheualier estes vous meilleur qui soit | & vous estes lhommme du monde que plus ie vouldroye honnouurer,¹ et si vous suis venu prier que vous herbergez ceste nuyt avec moy". Et il luy dist ainsi comme sil ne lauoit luy veu, "Qui estes vous, sire, qui me auez prie de me he[1]berger?" "Je suis gallehault, le sire de ces gens icy, vers qui vous iuez au ioudhuy garanty le royaume de logres, lequel ie eusse ia conquis se ne fust vostre corps" "Comment" (fait il) "vous estes ennemy de monseigneur le roy artus, et me priez de herberger? | Anee vous ne hebergeray ie mie en ce point" "Haa sue," fait gallchault, "plus feray ie pour vous, et si nay mye a commencer. Et ie vous prie que vous y herberiez par tel conuenant que ie feray tout ce que me scault requirir" A tant se arresta le cheualier, et dist a gallchault, "Sire, vous promettez assez | mais ie ne scay comment il est du rendre" | et gallehault luy dist "Sire, se vous he[r]-bergez emmuyt avec moy, ie vous donneray tout ce que vous oserez diuiser de bouche, et bien vous en feray seur," Et lors luy fiance, & apres luy promet bailler bons plages. Adonec sen vont tous deux en lost

"Comment gallehault suyut le cheualier aux
noires armes, et fist tant par belles parolles quil
lemmena en son ost, donc le roy artus & tous
ses gens en furent moult troublez.

MEssire gauuain auoyt veu aller le cheualier au noir escu, & le eust voulentiers suuy sil eust peu monter a cheual. Lors regarde contre val la muree, et voit gallehault et le cheualier noir qui retournoyent pour venir a lost, et dist a la royne, "Haa dame, or pouons nous bien dire que nous sommes gens perdis | regardez que gallehault a conquis par 'scauoir,' Et elle regarde, & voyt que cest le cheualier noir que gallehault emmaine, si en est tant iree quelle ne peut dire mot. Et messire gauuain se pasme en pou d'heure plus de trois fois. Le roi artus vint leans | et ouyt le cry que chascun disoit, "il est mort, il est mort". Si vint a luy, et lembressa, et commenca a plorer moult tendre-

¹ Compare lines 2845 8

ment Et reuient monseigneur Gauuan de pasmoison ,
Et quant il veit le roy artus, il commence a le blasmer,
et dit "Ores est venu le terme que les clercz vous
disrent Regardez le tresor que vous auez huy perdu
celluy vous toldra terre qui toute iour la vous a garantie
par son corps, et se vous fussiez preudhomme vous
leuissiez retenu, ainsi comme a fait le plus preudhomme
qui vive, qui par cy deuant lemmaine " Lors voit le
roy gallehault, qui emmenoit le cheuallier, dont il a tel
dueil que a pou quil ne est cheut | mais de plorer ne se
peut tenir, et toutesfois faict il la plus belle chere quil
peut pour son nepueu reconforter Et si tost que il vit
en la salle, il fist grant dueil | aussi fist chascun preud-
homme

He tells Arthur
that his time of
misfortune is
come,
for their pro-
tector is lost

Arthur also sees
Galot and is
deeply grieved
but tries to com-
fort his nephew

Tant sont allez gallehault et le cheualier quiz
sont venus empres lost, Adonec luy dist le
cheualier, "Sire, ains que ie entre dedans vostre ost,
faictes moi parler aux deux plus preudhommes que vous
ayez et esquelz vous fiez le plus " Et gallehault lot-
troye Lors sen va en son tref, et prent deux des
hommes du monde ou plus il se fie, et leur dist, "Venez
avec moy et vous verrez le plus riche homme du
monde " "Comment," font ilz, "nestes vous mie le
plus riche qui soit au monde ?" "Nenny," dist il |
"mais ie le seray ains que ie dorme " Ces deux estoient
le roy premier conquis | et le roi des cent cheualliers
Quant ilz virent le cheualier, si lui firent moult grant
ioye | Car ilz le congneurent bien par ses armes Et le
cheualier leur demanda qui ilz estoient | et ilz se nom-
merent sicomme vous auez ouy | et il leur dist
"Seigneurs, vostre sire vous faict moult grant honneur |
Car il dit que vous estes les deux hommes du monde
que plus il ayme, et entre luy et moy a vne conuenance
que ie vueil que vous oyez | Cai il ma fiance que pour
en nyut herbergen avec luy me donnea ce que ie luy
vouldray demander " Et gallehault dist | "vous dictes
verite " "Sire," faict le cheualier, "ie vueil encores
auoir la seurte de ses hommes " Et gallehault dist,
"Dictes moy comment " "Ilz me fianceront," fait le
cheualier, "que se vous me faillez de conuenant, ilz
vous guerpiront et sen viendront avec moy la ou ie
diray," Et gallehault dit que ainsi le veult | et il le fait
fiancer Lois appella gallehault le roy premier conquis
a vne part, et luy dist "Allez auant & dictes a mes
barons quiz assemblent maintenant a monstre si hon-
norablement comme ilz pourront, et gardez que en mon
tref soient tous les deduys que len pourra trouuer en

Galot and Lance-
lot arrive at Ga-
lot's camp

and Lancelot
asks to speak
with the two men
whom Galot
most trusts

Galot takes him
to the first-con-
quest king and
the king of a hun-
dred knights, and

Lancelot repeats
to them his com-
pact with Galot,

and takes their
pledge that they
will forsake
Galot if he
breaks his agree-
ment and will go
with himself
(Lancelot)

Galiot orders all
kinds of enter-
timents to be
brought to his
tent

Twenty eight
kings beside
dukes and counts
come to the feast
and honour Lan-
celot as the flower
of the knighthood
of the world

Lancelot is richly
attired and nobly
served

After supper four
beds are pre-
pared, one larger
than the rest, for
Lancelot

Galiot awhile de-
parts and Lance-
lot falls asleep

Galiot then re-
turns, and lies
near Lancelot,

and bears how
his guest mur-
murs in his sleep

Next day they go
to hear mass,

and Lancelot
then demands his
arms, wishing to
depart

tout lost" Lois sen va celluy au ferr des espeions, & fist le commandement de son seigneur Et gallehault tient le cheualier aux parolles, luy & son seneschal, tant que le commandement fust fait Si ne demoura gueres que encontre eux vindrent deux cens barons qui tous estoient hommes de gallehault, xxviii roys, et les autres estoient ducz et contes, la fut le cheualier telle ment honnoure que onques si grant feste ne fut pour vng homme mescongneu comme len fit pour luy a celle fois | et disoient grans & petis, " Bien viengnez, la fleur de la cheualerie du monde" | et il en auoit grant honte Ainsi vindrent jusques au tref de gallehault, si ne pozroient estre comtez les deduys et les instrumens qui leans estoient A telle ioye fut receu, et quant il fut desarme, gallehault luy fit apporter vne robe moult riche, et il la vestit quant le manger fut prest, ilz se assurent a table, et furent noblement seruis, et le cheualier fut moult honnoure

A Pres manger commanda gallehault a faire quatre litz desquelz lung estot plus grant que les aultres Quant les litz furent si richement atournez, gallehault maine le cheualier coucher Et dist "Sire, vous gerrez icy," "Et qui gerra de la?" fait le cheualier "Quattro sergens," faict gallehault, "qui vous seruront | Et ie iray en vne chambre par dela, affin que vous soyez icy plus en paix" "Haa, Sire, pour dieu," fait il, "ne me faictes gesir plus ayse que ces aultres cheualiers | car tant ne me deuez a vilennir" "Nayez garde," faict galehault, "Car ia pour chose que vous faciez pour moi vous ne serez tenu a villain" A tant sen part gallehault Et le cheualier commence a penser au grant honneur que gallehault luy faisoit Si lenprise moult | puis se coucha, et tantost il sendormit | car moult estoit las, Et quant gallehault sceut quil fut endormy, le plus coyement quil peut se coucha en vng autre lit empres luy | et es deux aultres litz se coucherent deux cheualiers, et nestoyent en la chambre que eux quatre, sans plus La nuyt se plaint moult le cheualier en son dormant, et gallehault loit bien, car il ne dormoit gueres Ains pensa toute la nuyt a le retenir Lendemain le cheualier se leua et alla ouyr messe, et ia estoit gallehault leue | car il ne vouloit mie que le cheualier laperceust Quant ilz vindrent du monstier, le cheualier demanda ses armes, & gallehault demande pourquoi Et il dist quil sen vouloit aller Et gallehault luy dist "Beau doulx amy, demourez | et ne cuydez mye que ie vous vueille deceuoir Car vous

noserez la riens demander que vous nayez Et sachez
 que vous pourriez bien auoir compagnie de plus riche
 homme que ie suis | mais vous ne laurez iamais a
 homme qui plus vous aime" "Sire," fait le cheual-
 lier, "ie demoureray donc puis quil vous plaist Car
 meilleure compagnie que la vostre ne pourroye ie mye
 auou | Mais ie vous diray presentement le don pour-
 quoy ie demoureray avec vous | et se ie ne lay, ie ny
 demoureray ia" "Sire," fait gallehault, "dictes seure-
 ment et vous laurez, se cest chose que ie puisse accom-
 plir," Et le cheuallier appella ses deux plauges et dist
 deuant eulx, "Je vous demande," fait il, "que si tost
 que vous serez au dessus du roy artus, que vous luy
 alliez crier mercy si tost comme ie vous en semondray"
 Quant gallehault lentent, si en est tout esbahy, et com-
 mence a penser Et les deux roys luy dirent "A
 quoy pensez vous icy endioit, de penser nauuez mestier |
 car vous auez tant couru que vous ne pouez retourner"
 "Comment," fait Gallehault, "cuydez vous que ie me
 vuelle repentir | se tout le monde estoit mien si luy
 oseroye ie bien donner mais ie pensoye a vng seul mot
 quil a dit | mais ia dieu ne maist," dist il, "se vous
 nauuez le don | car ie ne pourroye riens faire pour vous
 ou ie peusse auoir honte Mais ie vous prie que ne me
 tollez vostre compagnie pour la donner a aultruy," et
 le cheualier luy creanca Ainsi demoura | et ilz se
 asserent au manger qui estoit appreste Si font moult
 grant ioye par tout lost du cheualier qui est demoure
 Ainsi passerent celle nuyt Lendemain gallehault et
 son compaignon allerent ouyr messe, et gallehault luy
 deist | "Sire, il est huy iour dassembler, voullez vous
 armes porter?" "Ouy," dist il "donc porterez vous
 les miennes," fait gallehault, "pour le commencement"
 Et il dist quil les porteroit voulentiers | "mais vous ne
 porterez armes," feist il a gallehault, "si non comme
 mon sergent?" "Non," dist il Lors firent apporter
 les armes, & armerent le cheuallier du fort haulbert, &
 des chausses qui trop estoient longues & lees, Lors se
 armerent les gens de gallehault et pareillement les gens
 du roy Artus, & passerent les lices de telz y eut Toute-
 ffois le roy auoyt deffendu que nul ne les passast Si
 y eut de bonnes ioustes en pou dheure | si se assemblent
 tous les ostz deuant la lice, & commencerent a faire
 armes Le ioy artus estoit a son estandard, et auoit
 commande que ilz menassent la royne a sauluete se la
 descomfiture tournoit sur eulx | quant tous les ostz
 furent assemblez et le bon cheualier fust arme, si cuida

Galahot induces
him to stay

but agrun pro-
mises to do for
him whatever he
asks

Lancelot then de-
mands that Galahot
shall submit him-
self to Arthur

Galahot is con-
founded and
ponders but then
grants Lancelot's
request

Lancelot remains
with him another
night

Next day the
hosts are again
armed for battle

XXXVIII THE FRENCH CONTINUATION OF THE SCOTCH POEM

Lancelot is at
first mistaken for
Galot but is
recognized by
Gawain

Arthur's men
cannot stand
against Lancelot

Lancelot calls
upon Galot to
keep his com-
pact

Galot rides for-
ward and finds
Arthur ready to
kill himself for
grief the Queen
being escorted
away by a guard
of forty knights
and Gawain wish-
ing to die

How Lancelot
makes Galot cry
mercy to Arthur

Galot demands
to see King Ar-
thur,

and at sight of
him dismounts
kneels to him,

chascun que ce fust gallehault, & disoyent tous "Voicy gallehault, voicy gallehault" | messire gauuain le contegneust bien & dist "Ce nest mye gallehault | ains est le cheualier aux armes noires, le meilleur cheualier du monde" | & si tost comme ilz furent assemblez, oncques ne se tint le roy Artus ne ses gens depuis que le cheualier y fut arriue | et trop se desconfroyent du bon cheualier qzi contre eux estoit, si furent menez jusques a la lice car trop estoient grans gens avec gallehault au partir des lices ce tindrent vne piece et souffrissent longuement | mais le souffrit ny peut riens valoir Grant fut le meschief des gens au roy artus et dit le compte que le cheualier neust mie moins de peine de tenir les gens de gallehault que ilz ne passassent oultre la lice quil auoit de chasser les gens au roy Artus Et nompourtant moult les auoit supportez | & il les eut mis oultre a force sil eust voulu | mais il demoura emmy le pas pour les aultres detenir Lors regarda tout entour de luy, et commenca a hucher | "gallehault, gallehault" et gallehault vient grant alleure, et dist "bel amy, que voulez vous ?" "quoy," fait il, "je vuel que mon conuenant me tenez," "Par ma foy," fait gallehault, "je suis tout prest de lacomplir puis quil vous plaist" Lors picque le cheual des esperons & vient jusques a lestandart ou le roy artus estoit, qui faisoit si tresgrant duel que a peu qui ne se occioit pource quil estoit desconfit Si estoit ia la royne montee, et lemmenoyent quarante cheualliers Et monseigneur gauuain, que on vouloit emporter en lectiere | mais il dit qual aymeroit mieulx mourir en ce point que veoir toute cheualerie morte et honnye si se pasma tellement que len cuydor bien que il mourust incontinent

¶ Comment lancelot par la prouesse conquis tout, et fist tant que galehault crua mercy au roy artus

Quant le cheualier veit gallehault prest dacomplir son conuenant, il iura bien que oncques si loyal compaignon ne fut trouue Il en a telle ptyte quil en souprise moult fort, & dit entre ses dens "Haa dieu, qui pourra ce desserur ?" & gallehault cheuauche jusques a lestandart et demande le roy artus Il vient auant moult dolent & esmaye comme celluy qui tout honneur et toute roye terrienne cuyde auoir perdue, Et quant gallehault le voit, si luy dit "sire, roy artus, venez auant, & nayez paour | car je vueil a vous parler" et quant le roy louyt, il sesmerueille moult que ce peult estre, Et de si loing comme galehault le voit venir, il descend de son cheual et se agenouille, et dit "Sire,

ie vous viens faire droit de ce que ie vous ay meffait ,
si men repens, et me metz en vostre mercy ”

Qvant le roy lentend, il a merueilleusement grant
Ioye, et lieue les mains vers le ciel, louant Dieu
de ceste adauanture | et se le roy fait bonne chere, en-
cores la faict meilleure Gallehault et il se lieue de
genoulx, & sentiebaisent, en font moult grande chere
lung a l'autre lors dist Gallehault | “sire, faictes vostre
plaisir de moy | car ie metz en vostre saisine mon corps
pour en faire ce que il vous plaira Et sil vous plastrt,
ie yiaj retraires mes gens arriere, & puis reuiendray a
vous incontinent ” “Allez doncques,” fait le roy | “car
ie vueil parler a vous ” A tant sen part gallehault &
reuient a ses gens | & les en faict aller Et le roy
enuoya apres la royne, qui sen allout faisant grand dueil
et les messages cheuauchent tant que ilz lattaingnent |
et sont venus a elle, & luy comptent la Ioye que aduenue
leur est Et elle ne le peult croire tant quelle voy les
enseignes que le roy luy enuoye tant coururent les
nouuelles que monseigneur gauuan le sceut, lequel en
eut grant Ioye sur tous les aultres, et dist au roy
“Sire, comment a ce este ? ” “Certes, ie ne scay,” fait
il “mais ie croy que telle a este le plaisir de nostre
seigneur ” moult est grande la Ioye, & moult se esmer-
ueille chascun comment ce peult estre aduenu Galle-
hault dist a son compaignon “que voulez vous que ie
face ? iay fait vostre commandement, & le roy ma dit
que ie retourne | mais ie vous conuoyeray auant iusques
a voz tentes ” “Haa sire,” fait le cheualier, “aincoys
vous irez au roy & luy porterez le plus grant honneur
que vous pourrez Et tant auez fait pour moy que ie
ne le pourroye desseruir | mais tant vous prie, pour
dieu | et pour lamour que vous auez a moy, que nul ne
sache ou ie suis ” | ainsi sen vont parlant iusques a leurs
tentes chascun scait que la paix est faicta | mais
plusieurs en sont dolens | car mieulx aymassen la
guerre que la paix lois sont descenduz les deux
compaignons, et si tost quilz furent desarmez, Galle-
hault print vne de ses meilleures robes pour aller a la
court et feist cryer par tout son ost que chascun sen
allast, fors tant seulement leulx de son hostel Apres
appella les deux roys, et leur bailla son compaignon, &
leur commande quilz facent autant de luy comme de
son corps mesmes A tant monte Gallehault, et sen
va a la court du roy artus Et le roy luy vint alen-
contre, et la royne qui ia estoit retournee, & la dame de
malehault avec plusieurs dames & damoyselles A tant

and submits him
self to him
humbly

Arthur over
joyed praises
God

Gahot first ask-
ing Arthur's
leave dismisses
his troops to their
tents

The Queen and
Sir Gawain re-
joice greatly

Lancelot prays
Gahot not to re-
veal where he is,
and they return
to their tents.

Gahot commits
his guest to the
care of the two
kings and de-
parts to speak
with Arthur

Arthur and Galahot go together to the tower where Gauvain lies ill

Gauvain welcomes Galahot

The Queen the King and Gauvain rejoice at Galahot's coming,

but he soon after departs to see Lancelot for a short time promising to return

Lancelot tells Galahot to do whatever Arthur wishes

He charges Galahot again not to ask his name but to tell him about Arthur

Galahot praises the Queen

and Lancelot sheds tears

vont en la bretesche ou monseigneur gauvain gisoit malade et quant il sceut que galiehault venoit, il sefforce de belle chere faire, comme celluy qui onques mes ne lauoit veu de si pres lors luy dist | "bien soyez vous venu comme de celluy dont ie desiroye moult lacointance | car vous estes lhomme du monde qui plus doibt estre prise & ay me a droit de toutes gens Et ie cuyde que nul ne scait si bien congoistre preudhomme comme vous & bien y a paru" Ainsi parle messieur gauvain a galiehault, & il luy demande comment il luy est | et Gauvain dist "Jay este pres de mort mais la grant amour qui est entre vous & le roy ma guery" Moult font grant roye le roy artus & la royne & monseigneur gauvain de la venue de galiehault | et tout le iour ont parle de amour et d'acointance Mais du non cheualier ne tiennent ilz nulles parolles | ains passent le iour a resiouyr lung lautie tant quil vint au vespre Lors demande galiehault congie de ses gens aller vеoir Et le roy le luy donne | "mais vous reuendrez," fait il, "incontinent," et galiehault le luy octroye | si senreueut a son compaignon & luy demande comment il a lepus fait | et il luy respondit que bien, "Sire," fait galiehault, "comment feray ie | le roy ma moult prie que ie retourne a luy, & il me feront mal de vous laisser en ce point" "Haa, sire cheualier, pour dieu mercy, vous ferez ce que monseigneur le roy vouldra car iamais a plus preudhomme que il est ne eustes acointance Mais ie vueil que vous me donnez vng don" Et galiehault luy dist "Demandez ce quil vous plaira | car ie ne vous escondrioye iamais," "Sire," fait il, "ie vous remercye Vous me auez donne que vous ne me demanderez mon nom deuant que ie le vous diray" "Et ie men tiendray a tant puis que vous le voulez," dit galiehault "Et ne doubtez pas que ce eust esto la premiere chose que ie vous eusse demande, si men tarray a tant" Lors luy demanda de lacointance du roy artus | mais il ne nomme mie la royne | et galiehault dit que "le roy est moult preudhomme, & moult me poysé que ie ne lay congneu pieca | Car moult en feusse amende | mais ma dame la royne est sy vaillante que onques plus honeste dame ne vey" et quant le cheualier oyut parler de la royne, si se embronche et commence a soupirer durement et galiehault le regarde et se esmerueille moult porce que les laimes luy cheoyent des yeux, si commence a parler d'autre chose

Quant ilz ont longuement parle ensemble, le cheualier noir luy dist "Allez, si ferez a monsei-

THE FRENCH CONTINUATION OF THE SCOTCH POEM

gneui le roy compaignie, et si escoutez sy vous ourez de moy nulles parolles, & vous me compterez demain ce que vous aurez ouv" "Vouentiers, sme," fuit gallehault | lors le accolle, et dit aux roys "Je vous baille en garde cest homme comme le cucur de mon ventre" Ainsi sen va gallehault & le cheualier demure en la garde de deux preu[d]hommes du pays de Gallehault | mais il ne fault mye demander sil fust honnore | car len faisoit assez plus pour luy quil neust voulu celle nyut geurent les deux roys au tref gallehault pour lamour du cheualier & luy fient entendant quil ny coucheroyent mye | & ilz le firent coucher ainsi que Gallehault auoit fait lautre nyut Au commencement dormit le cheualier moult fort, et quant vint a mynuit si commenca a soy tourner, et commenca a fure vng duel si grant que tous ceulz qui entour luy estoient sen esueillerent Et en son refrain disoit souuent "Haa chetif, que pourray ie faire ?" Et toute nyut demena tel deuil Au matin se leuerent les deux roys le plus coyement quil peurent | & moult se merueillent quil pouoit auoir daultre part fut gillchault leue, & vint a son tief veou son compaignon Il demande aux deux roys que son compaignon fut Et ilz luy dirent quil auoit toute nyut mene grant duel Lors entre en la chambre ou il estoit, et si tost comme il le ouyt venir il essaye ses yeulx Adonc gallehault, curdant que il dormist, saillist dehors de la chambre incontinent, apres le cheualier se leua Et gallehault vit que il auoit les yeulx rouges et enfiez Adonc le prent par la main, et le tyre a part, et luy dist "Beau doulx compaignon, pou quoy vous occiez vous ainsi ? dont vous vient ce dueil que vous avez toute nyut demene, & le desplaisir que vous avez ? Je vous prie pour dieu que vous me diez la cause, et ie vous ayderay se nul homme mortel y peult conseil mettre," & commence a plourer si durement comme sil veist mort la chose du monde que mieulx aymast Lors est gallehault moult a malayse et luy dit, "Beau doulx compaignon, dictes moy vostre mescheance | car il nest nul homme au monde, sil vous auoit riens forfait, que ie nen pourchas-sse vostre droit" Et il dist que nul ne luy a riens meffut "beau doulx amy, pourquoy menez vous doncques si grant dueil ? Vous poise il que ie vous ay fait mon maistre & mon compaignon ?" "Haa," fait il, "vous avez asscz plus fait pour moy que ie ne pourroye desseruir, ne riens du monde ne me met a malaise que mon cuer, qui a toute paour que cuer mortel pourraut

Lancelot asks
Galhot to return
to Arthur and
to report to him
all the conversa-
tion

Lancelot sleeps
with the two
kings in Galhot's
tent

but awakes at
midnight and
makes a great
moaning

Galhot comes to
see after Lance-
lot

finds him with his
eyes red and
swollen,

and conjures him
to tell him what
the matter is
Lancelot cries bitter-
ly,

and says that it is
his heart which
has all the dread
that it is possible
for mortal heart
to have

auoir Si doubté moult que vostre grant debonnairete ne me occie" De ceste chose est gallehault moult a malayse, si reconforte son compaignon Apres allerent ouyr masse Quant vint que le prestre eut fait trois parties du corps de nostre seigneur, gallehault se trait auant, et tient son compaignon par la main, & luy monstre le corps de nostre seigneur que le prestre tenoit entre ses mains, Puis luy dist "doncques ne croyez vous pas bien que cest le corps de nostre saulueur?"

"Vourement le croy ie bien," fait le cheualier Et gallehault luy dist "beau doulx amy, or ne me mescreez mye que ces trois parties de chair que ie vois en semblance de pain, ia ne feray en ma vie chose que ie cuyde qui vous ennuye mais toutes les choses que ie scauray qui vous plairont, pourchasserau a mon pouoir" "sire," fait il, "grant mercys" A tant se taisent iusques apres la messe | et lors demanda gallehault a son compaignon quil fera, "Sire," fait il, "vous ne laisserez mie le roay en ce point | ains yrez luy faire compaignie" "Sire," fait il, "grant mercys" A tant sen part de luy, si le rebaaille aux preudhommes de la court du roay artus si font de luy grant signeurie sicomme ilz peuent

After dinner the King and Queen visit Gawain and he asks Galiot who made peace between him and Arthur

'A knight' says Galiot
But what knight asks Gawain

The Black Knight, answers the Queen show him to us

'I cannot, says Galiot, he is not from my country,'

Etant vint apres disner, sy furent le roay & la royne & gallehault appuyez au lict de messire gauuain, tant que messire gauuain dist a gallehault "Sire, or ne vous poise dune chose que ie vous demanderay" "Certes," fait gallehault, "non fera il" "sire, celle paix qui fut entre vous & mon oncle, par qui fut elle, par la chose au monde qui plus vous aymez?" "Sire," fait il, "vous me auez tant conuire que ie le vous diray Vng cheualier la fist" "Et qui est le cheualier?" fait messire gauuain "Si maist dieu," fait gallehault, "ie ne scay" "Qui fut celluy aux noires armes?" deist messire gauuain "Ce fut," fait il, "vng cheualier," "Tant," fait il, "en pouez vous bien dire | mais acquitter vous conuent" "Je me suis acquite de ce que me conurastes Ne plus ne vous en diray ores | ne rien ne vous en eusse ores dit, se vous ne me eussiez conuire" "Par dieu," fait la royne, "ce fut le cheuallier noir | mais faites le nous monstrar" "Qui | moy, dame?" fait gallehault, "ie le vous puys bien monstrar sicomme celluy qui riens nen scait!" "Taisez vous," fait la royne, "il est demoure avec vous, & hier porta voz armes" "Dame," fait il | "il est vray | mais ie ne le vys oncques puis que ie party du roay a la premiere fois" "comment,"

and Lancelot de claris his belief that the Bread is the Body of Christ

After Mass Lan celot bids Galiot go again to Arthur

fait le roy, "ne le cognoissiez vous mye | ie cuydoye
que il fust de vostre terre" "Si maist dieu, non est,"
fait gallehault "certes," fait le roy, "ne de la myenne
non est il mye" | Moult tindrent longuement gallehault
a parole le roy et la royne pour auoir le nom du cheua-
lier | mais plus nen peuvent tiaire et messue gauuain
craint quil ne ennuye a gallehault, si dist au roy "Or
en laissez a tunt le parler certes le cheualier est
preudhomme, & pleust a dieu que ie luy ressemblasse"
Moult loe messire gauuain le cheualier Si en ont la
parole laissee | et gallehault la recommerce et dit
"Sire, veistez vous oncques meilleur cheualier que
celluy au noir escu?" "certes," fait le roy, "ie ne vy
oncques cheualier de qui ie aymasse mieulx lacointance
pour cheualerie," "Non" | fait gallehault "Or me
dictes," fait gallehault, "par la foy que vous deuez a
ma dame qui cy est, combien vous vouldriez auoir donne
pour auoir son accointance a tousioursmais?" "Si
maist dieu," fait il, "ie luy partiroye la moytie de tout
ce que ie pourroye auoir, fors seulement de ceste dame"
"Certes," fait gallehault, "assez y mettriez Et vous,
messire gauuain, se dieu vous doint sante que tant
desirez, quel meschief en feriez vous pour auoir com-
paignie a si preudhomme?" Et quantz messire gauuain
lot, si pense vng petit comme celluy qui ne cuye-
lamais auoir sante "Se dieu me donnoit la sante que
ie desire | ie vouldroye orendroit estre vne des plus
belles dames du monde, par conuenant quil me aymast
tous les iours de sa vie" "par ma foy," fait gallehault,
"assez y auez mis" "Et vous, madame, quel meschef
feriez vous par conuenant que vng tel cheualier fust
tousiours en vostre seruice?" "par dieu," fait elle,
"messire gauuain y a mis toutes les offres que dame y
peult mettre" Et monseigneur gauuain & tous aultres
se commencerent a rire "Gallehault," fait messire
gauuain, "qui tous nous auez adureez par le serment
que ie vous coniuray, ores qui vouldriez vous y auoir
mys?" "Si maist dieu," fait gallehault, "ie y voul-
droye auoir tourne mon honneur a honte, par tel si que
ieusse a tousioursmais vng si bon cheualier en ma com-
paignie" "Sy maist dieu," fait messue gauuain,
"plus y auez mys que nous" et lors se pensa messire
gauuain que cestoit le noir cheualier qui le paix auoit
faict | car pour luy auoit tourne son honneur a honte,
quant il veit quil estoit au dessus Et le dist gauuain
a la royne, & se fut la cause dont gallehault fut plus
prise, Moult tindrent longuement parolles du cheualier

and Galhot will
not disclose the
knight's name,

but asks Arthur
if he ever saw a
better knight and
what he would
give to know him
henceforth

'Half of all I
have, except my
wife says
Arthur

And what would
you give Ga-
wain?

"I should like to
turn woman if
he would love me
all his life

"I can offer no
more than Ga-
wain says the
Queen

'Well says
Galhot I would
turn all my
honour into
shame for his
sake

So Gawain con-
cludes that it was
the Black Knight
who brought
about the peace

The Queen walks
away with Galiot
tells him she loves
him much and
prays him to let
her see the Black
Knight

He promises to do
all he can for her

and the Queen
says I shall be
sure to see him if
you try,

for he is in your
custody Send
and get him'

Arthur wishes
Galiot's people
and his own to be
brought nearer
to one another

Galiot returns to
Lancelot,

tells him what the
King, Gawain
and the Queen
have said of him

and asks him
what answer he
shall give the
Queen

et la royne sadressa, et dist quelle sen vouloit aller vers la bretesche pour veoir les prez, et gallehault la conuoye si le print la royne par la main & luy dist "Gallehault, ie vous aime moult, & il est vray que vous auez le cheualier en vostre baillie, & par aduenture il est tel que ie le congnois bien, si vous prie si cher que vous auez mamour, que vous faciez tant que ie le voye" "Dame," fait gallehault, "ie nen ay encores nulle saisine | & ne le vy puis que la paix fut faict de moy & du roy Et se il estoit or en mon tref, si y conuen drioit il autre voulente que le vostre & que la mienne Et bien sachez que tant me auez conuire que le mettray tout le pouoir que ie pourray comment vous pourriez parler a luy?" "se vous en faictes vostre pouoir," fait elle, "ie le verray bien, & ie men attens a vous, et faictes tant que le soye vostre a tousiours car cest vng des hommes du monde que le verroye plus voulentiers" "Dame," fait il, "ie en feray mon pouoir" "Grant mercys," fait elle "Or gardez que ie le voye au plus tost que vous pourrez | car il est en vostre baillie, ie le scay bien | et se il est en vostre terre, enuoyez le querre" Atant sen part gallehault & sen vient au roy Et monseigneur gauuan & le roy lui dient "gallehault, ie suis delire de mes gens, ores faictes approcher voz gens des nostres, ou le feray approcher les nostres des vostres | Car nous sommes a priuee mesme" "Sire," fait gallehault, "le feray approcher les miens daultre part de cest riuiere si que mon tref sera endioit le vostre, et sera vne nef appareilee en quoy nous passerons dicy la et de la icy" "Certes," fait le roy, "moult auez bien dit"

Lors sen va Gallehault en sa tente, et trouue son compaignon moult pensif Il luy demande comment il a pws fait, Et il dist, "bien, se paour ne me mestriast" et gallehault dist, "de quoy auez vous telle paour?" "que ie ne soye congneu," dist il "or nem ayez mie paour, car vous ny serez la congneu, se vostre voulente ne y est," Lors luy compte les offres que le roy et messire gauuan ont faict pour luy, et ce que la royne dit | et comment la royne la tenu a grant parlement de le veoir | et comme il luy respondit "et sachez que elle na de nully si tres grant desir de veoir comme de vous Et monseigneur la Roy ma prye que ie face mes gens approcher | car nous sommes tiop loing lung de lautre Or me dictes que vous voulez que je face | car il est en vostre plaisir" "Je loue que vous facez ce que monseigneur le roy vous pryc," "Et a ma

dame que respondray ie, beau doulx amy ? ” “ Certes,” fait il, “ ie ne scay ” Lors commence a souspiret Et Lancelot sighs,
 gallehault luy deist “ Beau doulx amy, ne vous esmayez point | mais dictes moy comment vous voulez quil soit | car bien saichez quil sera ainsi comme vous vouldrez | et ie aymeroye mieulx estie courrouce a la moytie du monde que a vous tout seul ores me dictes quil vous en plait ” “ Sire,” fait ledit cheualier, “ ce que vous me louerez | car ie suis en vostre garde desormais ” “ Certes,” fait gallehault, “ il me semble que pour vedor ma dame la royne il ne vous peult empyrer ” Lors apperceut gallehault assez de son penser, & le tient si court quil luy octroye ce quil demande | “ mais il conuendra,” fait il, “ que il soynt faict celeement, que nul ne le saiche | fors moy et vous ” Et gallehault dit que il ne se soulcye point “ Or dictes,” (fait le cheualier a gallehault,) “ a ma dame que vous me auez enuoye querre ” “ Sur moy en laissez le surplus,” dit Gallehault Lors sen part a tant, et comanda ses trefz a tendre la ou il auoit en conuenant au roy | et son seneschal fist son commandement

T Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne veit How Guinevere
 Lancelot, Et comment ilz se araisonnerent ensemble, et parlerent de plusieurs choses and Lancelot
 meet and talk

A Tant sen partit gallehault & sen vient au tref du roy, & si tost comme la royne le voit, si luy courut a lencontie, & luy demande comment il auoit explocte la besongne “ dame,” fait il, “ ie en ay fait tant que ie craing que lamour de vostre pryere ne me tolle la chose du monde que ie aymee plus ” “ Sy maist dieu,” fait elle, “ vous ne perderez riens par moy que ie ne vous rende ou double | mais que y pouez vous,” fait elle, “ perdre ? ” “ Celluy mesmes que vous demandez,” fait gallehault | “ Car ie doublet quil ne se courrouce, et que ie ne le perde a tousiours ” “ Certes,” fait elle, “ ce ne pourray ie pas rendre | mais ia par moy ne le perderez, se dieu plaist ” Et toutefoys dictes moy quant il viendra ” | “ dame,” fait il, “ quant il pourra | car ie lay enuoye querre, et croy que il ne demourra mye longuement ” De leui conseil entendit ung peu la dame de mallehault qui sen prenoit garde et nen faisoit mye semblant Lors sen partit gallehault et vient a ses gens qui estoient logez la ou il auoit com mande

Q Vant il fut descendu, il parla a son Seneschal et luy deist | “ quant ie vous enuoyeray querre, venez a moy, vous & mon compaignon en ce lieu la ” and tells his sen eschal to bring Lancelot when he sends for him

and says “ What ever you advise ”

‘ There will be no harm in seeing her answers Galot’

Lancelot says the matter must be managed secret ly, and they agree that Galot shall tell the Queen he has sent to seek for Lancelot

The Queen asks Galot what he has done for her

Sent to seek for your knight, says he

Galot returns to his men,

Gahot then goes
back to the
Queen says he
thinks she will
see her knight
that evening and
apoints to meet
her in an Orchard
below

After supper the
Queen goes to the
Orchard,

and Gahot sends
for his Seneschal
and the Knight,

who come

The Queen at first
cannot think that
either is the black
knight,

but one is so
bashful that she
fixes on him,

seats him by her,
smiles on him,
says she has so
longed to see him

and now he must
tell her who he is
I don't know
he answers

Et le roy des cent cheualiers, qui son seneschal estoit,
dist que moult voulentiers feroit son commandement &
son plaisir Lors salua Gallehault son compaignon, et
sen retorna a la court Et quant la royne veit galle-
hault qui estoit venu, elle luy dist que il gardast bien
et loyaulment ce quil luy auoit promis Et il luy dist |
“ dame, ie cuyde que vous verrez ennuyt ce que vous
avez tant desire ” Quant elle oyut ce, si en fut moult
ioyeuse, et moult luy ennuya ce iour pour sa voulente
acomplir du desir que elle auoit de parler a celuy ou
toutes ses pensees estoyent Lors luy deist Gallehault,
“ nous yrons apres soupper en ce vergier la aual ” | et
elle luy octroye Quant ce vint apres souper, si appelle
la royne | la dame de mallehault | et dame Lore de car-
dueil, une sienne pucelle, et sen vont tout droit la ou
gallehault auoyt dit | et gallehault prent ung escuyer
et luy dist “ Va et dy a mon seneschal que il viengne
la ou ie luy commanday ” Et celuy y va Apres ne
demoura guaires que le seneschal y vint, luy et le cheua-
lier Ilz estoyent tous deux de grant beaulte , Quant
ilz approcherent, si congneut la dame de mallehault le
cheualier comme celluy que elle auoyt eu maint iour en
sa baillie Et porce quelle ne vouloit mye que il la
congneut, se embroncha, et ilz passent oultre le sene-
schal lesalue Et gallehault dit a la royne “ Dame,
lequel vous semble il que se soit? ” | et elle dit “ Certes,
ilz sont tous deux beaux cheualliers | mais ie ne voy
corps ou il puisse auoir tant de prouesse que le noir
cheualier auoit ” “ or saichez, dame, que cest lung de ces
deux ” | a tant sont venuz auant, et le cheualier tremble
si que a peine peult saluer la royne, & la royne sen-
esmeruelle lors se agenouillent eulx deus, et le cheua-
lier laalue | mais cest moult pourement | car moult
estoit honteux Lors se pense la royne que cest il Et
gallehault dit au seneschal “ allez, si faites a ces dames
compagnie ” Et celluy fait ce que son sire luy com-
mande A doncques la royne prent le cheualier par la
main & le assiet iouxte elle Sy luy fait moult beau
semblant & dit en mant “ Sire, moult vous auons de-
sire, tant que, dieu mercy et gallehault, vous voyons et
nonpourtant encores ne cloy ie mye que ce soit celluy
que ie demande | & gallehault ma dit que cestes vous |
& encores vouldroye scauoir qui vous estes par vostre
bouche mesmes, se vostre plaisir y estoit ” Et celuy
dit que il ne scait | et onques ne la regarda au visage
Et la royne ce esmeruelle que il peult auoir, tant quelle
souspeconne une partie de ce quil a Et gallehault, qui

le voigt si honteux, pense quil veult dire a la royne son Gahot leaves the
penser seul a seul lors sen vient messire gauvain celle two to them
part, et fait rasseoir les damoyselles pour ce que leuees ses selves
touent encontre lui Puis commencez a parler de maintes and the Queen
choses Et la Royne dit au cheuallier, " Beau sire, asks the knight
pourquoys vous celez vous de moy ? Certes il ne y a cause Are not you he
nestes vous mie celluy qui porta les who wore the
noires armes, et qui vainquist lassemblee ? " " Dame, black armour
nenny " | " et nestes vous pas celluy qui porta lende- and overcame
main les armes a gallehault ? " " Dame, ouy, " " Donc everyone ?
estes vous celluy qui vainquistes lassemblee qui fut
faicte le premier iour par deuers nous et par¹ deuers
Gallehault ? " " Dame, non suis " Quant la royne et ' No I am not,
ainsi pailler le cheualier, a donc appercoit elle bien quil saith he
ne veult mie congoistre quil eust vaincue lassemblee, refusing to praise
si len prise mieulx la royne | car quant vng homme se himself
loe luy mesmes, il tourne son honneur a honte | et
quant autruy le loe, adonc il est mieulx prise " Or
me dictes," fait la royne a lancelot | " que vous fist ' Then who made
cheuallier ? " " Dame," fait il, " vous, " " Moy ? " fait you a knight and
elle, " Et quant ? " " Dame," fait il, " vous remembrez when ?
vous point quant vng cheuallier vint a Kamalot, lequel
estoyt naure de deux troncons de lance au corps, et
dune espee parmy la teste, et que vng varlet vint a
court en vng vendredy, et fut cheuallier le dymenche, et
deffera le cheuallier ? " " De ce," fait elle, " me souient
il bien | et se dieu vous aist, feustes vous ce que la
dame du lac amena en court vestu dune robe blanche ? "
" Dame, ouy " " Et pourquoys dictes vous donc que ie
vous fis cheuallier ? " " Dame," fait il, " ie dys vray |
Car la coustume est telle que nul ne peut estre cheuallier
sans ceindre espee Et celluy de qui il tient lespee,
le faict cheuallier, de vous la tiens ie Car le roy ne
la me donna onques Pour ce dis ie que vous me feistes
cheuallier " De ce est la royne moult ioyeuse | " ou vous
en allastes vous au partir de court ? " " Dame, ie men
allay pour secourir la dame de noehault, " " Et durant ce
temps me mandastes vous riens ? " " Dame, ouy | ie vous
envoyay peus pucelles " " Il est vray," dist la royne
" Et quant vous partistes de noehault, trouuastes vous nul
cheuallier qui se reclamast de moy ? " " Dame, ouy , vng
qui gardoit vng gue, et me dist que descendisse de dessus
mon cheual et le vouloit auoir, et ie lui demanday a qui il
estoit | et il dist a vous Puis lui demanday apres, qui le
commandoyt Et il me dist quil nauoyt nul commandement
que le sien Et adonques remys le pied en lestrief et

¹ The original has *pat*

and you girded on
my sword thus
knighting me

and I went away
to help the Lady
of Noehault and
sent you two
damsels

Then I met a
man who said he
was your knight

and I fought him
(for which I crave
your pardon)

After that I took
the Sorowful
Castle and there
I saw you thrice,

last when you
thought you had
lost Gauvain and
his companions,

and I helped to
deliver him from
prison

The Queen asks
the knight who
was in the tour et
above his room
there

A damsel whom
I never dishon-
oured,
but I asked her
not to leave till
she saw my mes-
senger or me
which I then
forgot and kept
her there a very
long time

How the Queen
knew Lancelot

When she heird
of this damsel the
Queen knew it
must be Lancelot

remontay | Car ie estoye ia descendu | et luy dis que il ne lauoyt point, et me combatis a luy | Et ie sciv bien que ie vous fis oultraige, si vous en c'ic mercy" | "Certes a moy ne en feistes vous point | Car il nestoyst moye a moy | et luy sceuz mauluais gre de ce quil ce reclama de moy Mais or me dictes on vous en allastes la?" "Dame, ie men allay a la douloureuse garde" | "& qui la conquist?" "Dame, ie y entray" | "et ne vous y viz ie onques" "Ouy, plus de troy foys" "Et en quel temps?" fist elle "Dame," fist il, "vng iour que ie vous deman day se vous vouliez leans entrei, Et vous d'ictes ouy | et estiez moult esbahye par semblant" "Et quel escu portiez vous?" "Dame, ie portay a la premiere foys vng escu blanc a vne bande de belif vermeille | Et lautre foys vng ou il y auoyt deux bendes" | "Et vous vys ie plus?" "Ouy, la nuyt que vous cuidiez auou perdu messire Gauvain et ses compaignons, et que les gens cryoyent que len me prenist, Je vins hois a tout mon escu a troyes bendes" "Certes," fuct elle, "ce poise moy | car se on vous eust detenu, tous les enclante ments feussent demourez | Mais or me dictes, fustes vous ce qui lettastes messire Gauvain de prison?" "Dame, ie y ayday a mon pouou" "Certes," fait elle, "en toutes les choses que vous me dictes ie nay trouue si non verite Mais or me dictes qui estoit en vne tour nelle dessus la chambre monseigneur" "Dame, cestoyt vne pucelle que ie ne villennay onques | Car ma dame du lac la me auoyt enuoyee | si me trouua en ceste tournelle | il fut assez qui la honnora pour moy Quant ie ouy nouuelles de monseigneur Gauvain, si en fut moult angoisseux, et men party de la Damoyselle qui auecqves moy debuoit venir, et luy priay que elle ne se remuast tant que elle eust mon message ou moy Si fus si surpris de tresgrant affaire que ie loubliay | et elle fut plus loyalle uers moy que ie ne fus courtois vers elle | car onques ne se remua jusques a ce quelle eut mes enseignes, et ce fut grant piece apres"

Comment la royne congneut Lancelot ypres quil eut longuement parle a elle, et quil luy eut compte de ses aduentures Et comment la premiere acointance fut faicte entre lancelot et la royne geniere par le moyen de gallehaul

Quant la royne eut parle de la damoiselle, si scait bien que cest Lancelot Si luy enquist de toutes les choses quelle auoit ouy de luy, et de toutes le trouua vray disant, "Or me dictes," fait elle, "vous vy ie puis?" "Ouy, dame, telle heue que vous me eustes

bien mestier | car ieusse este noye a kamalot se ne eussiez vous este" "Comment! feustes vous celluy que daguenet le fol print?" "Dame, prins fus ie sans faulte" "Et ou allez vous?" "Dame, ie alloye apres vng cheuallier" "Et vous combatistes vous a luy" | "dame, ouy" "Et dillec ou allastes vous?" "Dame, ie trouuay deux grans villains que me occirent mon cheual | mais messire yuain, qui bonne aduenture ayt, men donna vng" "Ha, ha," fait elle, "ie scay bien qui vous estes, Vous auez nom lancelot du lac" Il se taist "Par dieu," fait elle, "pourneant le celez | long temps a que messire Gauuain apporta nouuelles de vostre nom a court," Lors luy compta comment messire yuain auoit compte que la damoyselle auoit dit | cest la tierce "Et anten quelles armes portastes vous?" "Vnes vermeilles" "Par mon chef cest verite Et auant hier pourquoy feistes vous tant darmes comme vous feistes?" Et il commenca a soupirer "Dictes moy seurement | Car ie scay bien que pour aulcune dame ou damoyselle le feistes vous, et me dictes qui elle est, par la foy que vous me deuez" "Haa, dame, ie voy bien quil le me conuent dire, cestes vous" "Moy?" fait elle "Voire, dame" "Pour moy ne rompistes vous pas les trois lances que ma pucelle vous porta?" "Car ie me mis bien hors du mandement, dame, ie fis pour elle ce que ie deuz, et pour vous ce que ie peux" "Et combien a il que vous me asymez tant?" "Des le iour que ie fus tenu pour cheuallier, et ie ne lestoye mye" | "Par la foy que vous me deuez, dont vindrent ces amours que vous auez en moy mises?" "dame," fait il, "vous le me feistes faire qui de moy feistes vostre amy, se vostre bouche ne me a menty" "Mon amy!" fait elle, "comment?" "Dame," fait il, "ie vins devant vous quant ie eu prins congé monseigneur le roy | si vous commanday a dieu, et dis que ie estoye vostre cheuallier en tous lieux Et vous me dictes que vostre amy et vostre cheuallier vouliez vous que ie feusse Et ie dys, "a dieu! dame" Et vous distes "a dieu! mon beau doulx amy!" Ce fut le mot qui preudhomme me fera, se ie le suis, ne oncques puis ne fus a si grant meschef que il ne men remembrast Ce mot ma conforte en tous mes ennuys Cest mot ma de tous maulx guaray Cest mot ma fait riche en mes pouretez," "Par ma foy," fait la royne, "ce mot fut en bonne heure dict | et dieu en soyt asoure | ne ie ne le prenoye pas acertes comme vous feistes, et a maint preudhomme ay ie ce dict ou ie ne pensay oncques riens que le dire Mais la coustume est

and asks him if
he was the knight
whom Daguenet
took He answers
Yes and that
two rascals killed
his horse and
Ywain gave him
another

'Ah then your
name is Lance
lot says she

'and for what
lady or damsel
did you do such
feats of arms the
day before yes
terday?

"For you Lady
and for you I
broke the three
lances that you
maiden brought
me

for you had made
me your friend
and said I was
your knight in
all lands, and bid
me adieu as your
own sweet friend

That word has
never left me but
always been my
strength and
wealth

Oh but that
was only an ordi-
nary compli-
ment says Gui-
nevere to tease
him

This grieves Lan-
celot so that he
nearly faints at
which Galhot is
greatly grieved

tells the Queen
that Lancelot is
the gallantest
and iuest of
men

and prays her to
have mercy on
him

What mercy ?
says she

there is nothing
he can ask of me
that I will not
do but he will
not ask

"He does not
dare answers
Galhot but I will
ask for him

telle des cheualliers que font a maunte dame semblant de telles choses dont a gueres ne leur est au cuer " Et ce disoit elle pour veoir de combien elle le pourroit mettre en malaise , Car elle veoit bien quil ne pren-
doint a autre amour que a la sienne | mais elle se delec-
toyt a sa malaisete veoir, et il eut si grant angoisse que par vng pou quil ne se pasma | & la royne eut paour quil ne cheist, si appella gallehault, et il y vint accouant Quant il voyt que son compaignon est si courrouce, si en a si grant angoisse que plus ne peut " Haa, dame," fait gallehault, "vous le nous pourrez bien tollir, et ce seroit trop grand dommaige " "Certes, sire, se seroit mon," "Et ne scauez vous pour qui il a tant fait darmes ?" fait gallehault "Certes, nenny," fait elle | "mais, se il est veoir ce qui ma este dict, cest pour moy , " "Dame, se maist dieu, bien len pouez croire | car aussi comme il est le plus preudhomme de tous les hommes | aussi est son cuer plus vray que tous aultres " "Voirement," fait elle, "diriez vous quil seroit preudhomme se vous scauez quil a fait darmes puis quil fut cheuallier" Lors luy compte tout ainsi comment vous avez ouy | "et sachez quil a ce fait scullement pour moy," fait elle Lors luy prie galle-
hault, & dist "Pour dieu, dame, ayez de luy mercy, et faictes pour moy ainsi comme ie fis pour vous quant vous men priastes " "Quelle mercy voulez vous que ien aye ?" "Dame, vous scauez que ie vous ayme sur toutes, et il a fait pour vous plus que onques cheualier ne fist pour dame, et sachez que la paix de moy et de monseigneur neust iuste faict se neust il este " "Certes," fait elle, "il a plus faict pour moy que ne pourroye desserur, ne il ne me pourroyt chose requerre dont ie le peusise escondre | mais il ne me requiert de riens | ians est tant melencolieux que meueilles " "Dame," fait gallehault, "aeuz en mercy , il est celluy qui vous ayme plus que soy mesmes Si maist dieu, ie ne scauoye riens de sa voulente quant il vint, fois quil doubtoit de estre congneu, ne onques plus ne men descouurit " "Je en auray," fait elle, "telle mercy comme vous vouldrez " "Dame, vous auez fait ce que ie vous ay iequis , aussi doy ie bien faire ce que vous me requerez " Se dit la royne, "il ne me requiert de riens " "Certes, dame," fait gallehault, "il ne ose | car len ne aymera la riens par amours que len ne craigne | mais ie vous en prie pour luy, & se ie ne vous en priasse, si le deussiez vous pourchasser Car plus riche tresor ne pourriez vous conquerester " "Certes,"

fait elle, "ie le scay bien et ie en feray tout ce que vous commanderez" "Dame," fait Gallehault, "grant mercy Je vous prie que vous luy donnez vostre amour, et le retenez pour vostre cheuallier a tousiours, et deuenez sa loyalle dame toute vostre vie | et vous le aurez fait plus riche que se vous luy auez donne tout le monde"

Then I will
grant it says
Queen Guenevere
Galot prays her
to give Lancelot
her love and be
come his loyal
lady all her life

"Certes," fait elle, "ie luy ottroye que il soyt mien | et moy toute sienne, et que par vous soyent amendez tous les meffaitz" "Dame," fait Gallehault, "grant mercy Or conuent il commencement de seruice , "

She promises to
be Lancelot's
and that she will
do everything she
is told

"Vous ne deuiserez riens," fait la royne, "que ie ne face" "Dame," fait il, "grant mercy | donc baisez le deuant moy pour commencement de vrayes amours "

Then kiss L'ncelot before me
says Galot

"Du baiser," fait elle, "ie ne voy ne lieu ne temps | et ne doubtez pas," fait elle, "que ie ne le voulisse faire aussi voullentiers quil feroit | mais ces dames sont cy qui moult se merueillent que nous auons tant fait, si ne pourroyt estre que ilz ne le vissent Nompourtant,

This Guenevere
agrees to do if
Lancelot wishes
it

se il veult, ie le baiseray voullentiers" Et il en est si ioyeulx que il ne peult responder si non tant quil dict

Galot says there
is no doubt about
Lancelot's wish

"Dame," fait il, "grant mercy" | "dame," fait Gallehault, "de son voulour nen doubtez ia | Cai il est tout

and as he is bash
ful, the Queen
takes him by the
chin, and kisses
him before Gal
iot (The Lady
of Mallehault
sees her)

vostre, bien le sachez, ne ia nul ne sen apperceuera , Nous troys serons ensemble ainsi comme se nous conseillions" | "Dequoy me feroye ie pryer" | fait elle |

Guenevere tells
Lancelot that she
is his but charges
him to keep the
matter secret,

"plus le vueil ie que vous" Lors se trayent a part, et font semblant de conseiller La Royne voyt que le cheuallier nen ose plus faire, si le prent par le menton, et baise deuant Gallehault assez longuement Et la dame de Mallehault (*sic*) scut de vray que elle le

and Galot too

baisoyt Lors parla la Royne qui moult estoyst sage & vaillant dame "Beau doulx amy," fait elle, "tant auez fait que ie suys vostre , Et moult en ay grant ioye Or gardez que la chose soyt celee Car mestier en est Je suys une des Dames du monde dont len a

Galot promises
thus

greigneur bien dict, Et se ma renominee empiroyt par vous, il y auroyt layde amour et villaine | et vous,

Gallehault, ie vous prie que mon honneur gardez | Car vous estes le plus sage | Et se mal men venoyt, ce ne seroyst si non par vous , Et se ien ay bien et ioye, vous me lauez donnee"

"Dame," fait Gallehault, "il ne pourroyt vers vous mesprendre, et ien ay bien faict ce que vous me commandastes Or vous prie que faciez ma voulente ainsi comme iay fait la vostre," "Dictes,"

fait elle, "tout ce quil vous plaira hardyment | car vous ne me scauriez chose commander que ie ne face"

"Dame," fait il, "donc mauez vous ottroye que ie

and asks Guinevere to make Lancelot his companion for ever

She takes Lancelet's hand gives him to Galloot

and says she has given him Lancelot's hand, son of King Ban

This gives Galloot more joy than ever he had before as he had often heard how Lancelot was the gallantest knight in the world

By the bright moonlight they recross the meads towards Lancelot's tent

and Galloot sends Lancelot there while he conducts the Queen to Arthur's tent,

and tells him they have only been looking at the fields by themselves

Galloot sees the Queen to her tower

and then takes leave of Arthur and of Gawain

and goes to Lancelot's bed

seray son compaignon a tousiours" "Certos," fait elle, "se de ce vous faillot, vous auriez mal emploie la peine que vous auez prinse pour luy et pour moy" Lors prent le cheuallier par la main, et dict "Gallehault, ie vous donne ce cheuallier a tousiours sans ce que iay auant eu, et vous le me creancez ainsi" | et aussi le cheuallier luy creance | "scauez vous," fait elle, "Gallehault, que ie vous ay donne lanclot du lac, le filz au roy ban de bencoc," Ainsi luy a fait le cheuallier congoistre, qui moult en a grant honte Lors a gallehault greigneure loye quil neust onques | car il auoit maintesfois ouy dire, comme parolles vont, que cestoyt le meilleur cheuallier et le plus preur du monde, et bien scauoit que le roay ban auoit este moult gentil homme, et moult puissant de amys et de terre

Ainsi fut faict le premiere acomptance de la royne et de lancelot par gallehault | et Gallehault ne lauoit oncques congneut que de veue, et porce luy fait creancer quil ne luy demanderoit son nom tant quil luy dist, ou autre pouz luy Lors se leueut tous troys, et il anuytoit durement Mais la lune estoit luce, si faisout cler | Si que elle luysoyt par toute la praece | Lors sen retournerent a vne pait contremont les picz droit vers le tref le cheuallier, & le seneschal et gallehault vint apres luy & les dames tant quil vindient endroit les tentes de gallehault Lors enuoya Gallehault son compaignon a son tref, et prent conge de la royne, et gallehault la conuoye jusques au tref du Roy Et quant le roay les veyt, si demanda dont ilz venoient "Sire," fait Gallehault, "nous uenons de veoir ces pres a si peu de compaignie comment vous veez" Lois se assient, et parlent de plusieurs choses, si sont la Royne et Gallehault moult ayses

AV chef de piece se leua la royne, et sen alla en la bretesche, gallehault la conuoya jusques la Puis la commande a dieu, et dist quil sen yroit gesir avec son compaignon "Bien auez fait," dit la royne, "il en sera plus ayse" | A tant sen part gallehault, et vient au roay prendre conge, et dist quil ne luy desplaise, et que il yra gesir avec les gens porce quil ny auoyt geu de grant piece, et dist "Sire, ie me doibz pener de faire leur voulente | car ilz me ayment moult" "Sire," fait mesure gauuain, "vous dictes bien, et len doit bien honnore telz preudhommes qui les a" Lors sen part gallehault et vient a son compaignon, Ilz se coucherent tous deux en vng lict, et deviserent la une piece Si nous laisserons ores a parler de gallehault &

de son compugnon, et dirons de la royne qui est venu
en la bretesche

Quant gallehault fut party, la royne sen alla en
vne fenestre, et commence a penser a ce que
plus luy plaisoyt La dame de mallhault saprocha
delle quant elle la vit seulle, et luy dist le plus priuee-
ment que elle peut "Haa, dame!" pourquoy ne est
bonne la compagnie de quatye?" La royne le oyust
bien, si ne dit mot, et fait semblant que riens nen oyut
Et ne demoura gieres que la dame dist celle parole
mesmes, la royne lapella et dist "Dame, pourquoy
avez ce dit?" "Dame," fait elle, "pardonnez moi, ie
nen diray ores plus | car par aduenture en ay plus dit
que a moy napartient | & len ne se doit mi faire plus
priuee de sa dame que len est | car tost en acquert on
hayne" "Si maist dieu," fait la royne, "vous ne me
pourriez riens dire dont vous eussiez ma haine | ie vous
tiens tant a saige et a courtoise, que vous ne diriez
riens qui fust encontre ma voulente | Mais dictes hardy-
ment | Car ie le vueil, et si vous en prie" "Dame,"
fait elle, "donc le vous diray ie | Je dy que moult est
bonne la compagnie de quatre, Jay huy veu nouveau
accountement que vous avez faict au cheuallier qui parla
a vous la bas en ce vergier Et scay bien que cest la
personne du monde qui plus vous ayme, et vous ne avez
pas tort se vous laymez | car vous ne pourriez vostre
amour mieulx employer," "Comment," fait la royne,
"le congoissez vous?" "Dame," fait elle, "telle heure
a este ouen que ie vous en eusse bien peu faire refus
comme vous en pouez ores faire a moy | car ie lay tenu
vng an et demy en prison Cest celluy qui vaincqut
lassemblee aux armes vermeilles | & celle de deuant
hier aux armes noires, les vnes & les autres luy baillay
ie, Et quant il fut auant hier sui la muiere pensif, et ie
luy voulu mander que il fist vaillamment armes, ie ne
le faisoye sinon pour ce que ie esperoye quil vous aymast,
si cuydoye telle heure fust que il me aymast |
Mais il me mist tost hors de cuyder, tant me descourent
de son penser" Lors luy compta comment elle lauoit
tenu en prison an et demy | et pourquoy elle lauoit
prins "Or me dictes," fait la royne, "quelle com-
paignie vault mieulx dc quatre que de troys | car mieulx
est vne chose celee par trois que par quatre" "Certes
non est cy endroit, et si vous diray Vray est que le
cheualier vous ayme, et aussi fait il gallehault, et desor
mais se conforteront lung lautre en quelque terre qu'il
soient Car icy ne seront ilz pas longuement et vous

Queen Guinevere
goes to the win-
dow to think

and the Lady of
Mallehault asks
her why four are
bad company

At first Guine-
vere will not hear
this but the Lady
repeats it,
the Queen asks
why she says it
and the Lady
asks pardon as
perhaps she has
said too much
"No says Gui-
nevere

' speak boldly
out, I wish it

"Then I must
say that I think
four very good
company I saw
the new acquaint-
ance you made
to day and know
he is the man
who loves you
most in the
world

I kept him a year
and a half in pri-
son and gave him
both the red and
the black arms in
which he won the
tourney,

and I thought
then that he loved
me but he soon
undeceived me

The Queen an-
swers. But tell
me why four are
better company
than three?

Because
though your
knight loves you
he loves Galahot
too and they will
not stay here

long but you will,
and if you have
no one else to tell
your thought to,
you will be forced
to keep your faith
to yourself, but
if you will let me
be a fourth
we can comfort
one another

Queen Guinevere
agrees to this
with great joy,

and tells the Lady
that the knight is
Lancelot of the
Lake

At night the
ladies sleep to
gether,

and talk of their
new loves,

the Lady of Mal
leault saying
that she never
loved but one
and then only in
thought (and
that was Lance
lot)

The Queen thinks
she will make the
Lady and Galhot
fall in love with
one another
Next morning Ar
thur's tent
and wake him,
and then return
over the mea
dows

demourerez cy toute seule, et ne le scaura nul fors
vous | ne si ne aurez a qui descouvrir vostre pensee, si
porterez ainsi vostre faix toute seulle | mais sil vous
pleust que le fusse la quarte en la compagnie entre nous
deux dames, nous solacierons ainsi comme entre eulx
deux cheualiers feront, si en seriez plus aise" "Scauez
vous," fait la royne, "qui est le cheuallier?" "Se
maist dieu," fait la dame, "nenny" "Vous avez bien
ouy comment il se couurt vers moy" "Certes," fait
la royne, "moult estes apparceuante, et moult conuenient
estre sage qui vous vouldroit rien embler, & puis
que ainsi est que vous lauez apeiceu, et que vous me
requerez la compagnie, vous laurez | mais le vnel que
vous portez vostre faix ainsi comme ie feray le mien"
"Dame," fait elle, "ie feray ce que il vous plaira, pour
ci haulte compagnie auoir" "En verite," fait la royne,
"vous laurez | car meilleure compagnie que vous ne
pourroye ie mye auoir" "Dame," fait elle, "nous
serons ensemble toutes les heures quil vous plaira"
"Jen suys ioyeuse," fait la Royne "Et nous affir
merons demain la compagnie de nous quatre" Lors
luy compte de Lancelot, comment il auoyt ploure quant
il regarda deuers elle, "et ie scay que il vous congneut,
et sachez que cest lancelot du lac, le meilleur cheualier
qui viue" Ainsi parlerent longuement entre elles
deux | et font moult grant ioye de leur accointement
nouveau Icelle nuyct ne souffrit onques la Royne de
logres que la dame de malleault geust sinon avec elle |
mais elle y geut a force Car elle doubttoy moult de
gesir avec si riche dame, Quant elles furent couchees si
commencerent a parler de leurs nouvelles amours, La
royne demanda a la dame de malleault selle a[y]me
nulluy par amours, et elle luy dict que nenny "Saichez,
dame, que ie naymay onques que vne foy, ne de celle
amour ne fis ie que penser," et ce dit elle de lancelot,
quelle auoit tant asyme comme femme pourroit aymer
homme mortel | Mais elle nen auoit onques aultre ioye
eue, non pourtant ne dit pas que ce eust il este La
royne pensa quelle feroyt ses amours de elle et de galle
hault, mais elle nen veult parler iusques a tant quelle
scaura de gallhault sil la veult aymer ou non | car
autrement ne len requerroit elle pas Lendemain se
leuerent matin elles deux, & allerent au tref du roy, qui
gisoit la pour faire a monseigneur gauuin et aux autres
cheualiers compagnie La royne sesueilla, & dist, "que
moult estoyt mauvais qui a ceste heure dormoyt" Lors
se tournerent contreual les prez, et dames et damoyselles

avec elles Et ils allerent la ou lacountement damours auoyt este faict, et dict la Royne a la dame de mallehault toute lacountance de lancelot | et comme il estoit esbahy deuant elle, et riens ne luy laissa a dire Puis commenca a louer gallehault, et dit que cestoit le plus saige homme et le plus vertueulx du monde, "Certes," fait elle, "je luy compteray lacountance de nous deux quant il viendra, et sachez que il en aura grant ioye Or allons | car il ne demourra gueres quil ne viengne "

where the meet
ing with Lancelot
took place
and the Queen
tells the Lady of
Mallehault all
about it
and then praises
Galhot as the
wiseest and best
man in the world

The rubric of the next chapter is as follows

¶ Comment la premiere acoountance fut faute de gallehault et de la dame de malehault *par le moyen de la royne de logres* Et comment lancelot & gallehault sen alloient esbatre et deuiser avec leurs dames

How Galhot be
came acquainted
with the Lady of
Melyhalt

It relates how Queen Guinevere requires Galhot to let her dispose of his love as he had disposed of hers To this he consents, and she commands him to the Lady of Mallehault Next, they arrange for the promised *parlement de eux quatre*, and the queen points out to Lancelot the lady who had so many a day kept him in prison, i e , the Lady of Mallehault At recognizing his old acquaintance, Lancelot feels somewhat distressed, but is reassured by observing the new love-making between her and Galhot Seated in a wood, the four "demourerent grant piece, ne onques ne tindrent parolles, fors tant seulement de accoller & de baiser comme ceulx qui voulentiers le fairoyent "

We next hear of Gawain's recovery, and of the separation of the party of four above spoken of Galhot takes Lancelot home with him to his own country, whilst the Lady of Mallehault remains for a time with the queen and Arthur When Lancelot is next spoken of, he is in Galhot's country, where we will now leave him

NOTES TO THE APPENDIX

P xxiii *Descosse* = *d'Écosse*, of Scotland In Old French, words are frequently run together, thus we have *labbaye* for *l'abbaye*, *sesmeuement* for *s'emeuement*, etc. Also the letter *s* is often replaced in modern French by an acute or circumflex accent, so that *Escose* = *Écosse*, *chasteau* = *château*, etc. The word *si* often occurs below with a great variety of meanings, *vi*, I, he, and, also, so, thus, etc.

P xxiv *baille*, given, entrusted *brouyn* (*bifler*), being burnt *monstier*, monastery *gauues*, so in the original throughout, *gauues* is used in other romances

P xxv *auecques* = *avec*, with

P xxvi *aduision*, vision *behoundys*, tournament *naine*, wounded *deffera* = *desferia*, un ironed, it means that Lancelot drew the weapons out of the knight's wounds *deuers*, "Preposition relative au temps et au lieu dont on parle, près, vers, contie, proche, de *versus*" Roquefort *oetroya*, peinmuted (authorized) *mouille*, lit wetted, insulted

P xxvii *verrent*, saw *escript* (*écrit*), written **lassemblee*, the gathering, i.e. the war, strife *rua*, overthrew

P xxviii *mire*, physician *gue*, ford, pass *tresues*, a truce, spelt *treues* on p. xxxix

P xxix *esbatre*, to divert oneself In modern French, *s'abattre*

P xxx *orrions*, shall hear *deust* = *dit* *cheorent*, from *cheoir*, to fall Compare *chûte* *poilz*, hairs *esbahy*, amazed *ortelz*, toes *charille*, from *chalou*, to be anxious about *dilacion*, delay

P xxxi *pauur*, fear. *mire*, physician *veufue*, old

P xxxii *cheuauche*, rides *boutte*, buts, pushes *recte* (*jeté*), cast *cuyde*, I believe *Si maist dreu*, so God aid me Here *maist* is put for *m'arist* *oncqves*, ever *ennuyt*, this night, to night, *lottoyera*, will grant him his request *conroy*, troops

P xxxiii *derrains* (*derniers*), last *busines*, trumpets *Or y perra*, now it will appear *cudroit*, believed, from the old verb *quider* *cheuauchent*, ride *ra*, already *tertre*, a small hill

P xxxiv *adresse*, a cross path *huy*, just before, *lit* this day
 Lat *hodie se pasme*, swoons *leuns*, thither

P xxxv *ores*, now *huy*, to-day *preudhomme*, a wise and
 prudent man *lottroye*, permits him *tref*, tent *nemny*, no *uns*,
 before *guerpiron*, will leave *deduys*, amusements, diversions

P xxxvi *leans*, there *gerier*, will lie *las*, tired *Ains*, but

P xxxvii *semondray*, shall ask *esbahy*, amazed *toller*, take
 away *creanca*, promised *tees*, wide, full *lices*, lists

P xxxviii *emmy le pas*, in the midst of the passage *huchis*, to
 cry aloud

P xxxix *heue*, lifts *saisine*, disposal *enserynes*, tokens
aincoys, first of all

P xl *oncques mes*, never *a resrouyr* (*régour*), in amusing
escondroye, will refuse *me poye*, it troubles me *preca*, long ago
se embronche, covers his face

P xli *sen esuerillerent*, awoke thereat *Adone*, then *riens jor
 fait*, anyway injured

P xlii *ne me mescree mye que*, do not doubt me more than

P xliii *doint*, gives, were to give

P xlvi *mesgnie*, properly the *suite* or household of a prince, see
 Roquefort s v *magine* and *margnee nef*, a boat *loue*, advise

P xlvi *vous esmuya*, afflict yourself *courrouce*, wroth, dis
 pleased

P xlvi *ver grer*, orchard *aual*, below *se embroncha*, she veiled
 herself, or, hid herself *rouxte*, beside

P xlvi *mantes*, many *ot*, heard *len prise mieula*, esteemed
 it better *loe*, praises *deffra*, dis ironed, drew the weapons out
 of *lestref*, the stirrup

P xlvi *leans (la dedans)*, there *belyf* We find in Cotgrave's
 French Dictionary, "Belic, a kind of red or geuleas, in Blazon"
enseignes, tokens, message

P xlix *mestier*, serviceable *dillec*, thence *pouneant*, for
 nothing, in vain *voire*, truly *commanday a dieu*, commended to
 God, bade farewell

P li *mestier en est*, there is need of it *greigneur bien*, exceed-
 ingly well, very highly

P li *greigneure*, greater *anuytort*, became night *re me doibr
 pener*, I ought to take pains

P li *ouen*, this year

The Romans
of
Lancelot of the Lake.

[PROLOGUE]

T	He soft morow ande The luftee Aperill,	
	The wynter set, the stormys in exill,	<small>[Fol. 1] In April when the fresh luminary upriseth</small>
Quhen	that the brycht and fresch illumynare	
Uprisith	arly in his fyre chare	4
His hot courſt	in to the orient,	
And frome his ſphere	his goldine ſtremis ſent	
Wpone	the grond, in maner off meſag,	<small>and ſendeth from his ſphere his golden streams</small>
One euery thing	to valkyne thaſ curage,	8
That natur haith	ſet wnder hire mycht,	
Boith gyrf, and flour,	and euery luſty vicht	
And namly thame	thaſ felith the affay	
Of lufe, to ſchew the kalendis of may,		12
Throw birdis ſonge wth opine wox one hy,		
That ſeffit not one lufaris for to cry,		
Left thaſ forȝhet, throw flewth of Ignorans,		
The old wſage of lowis obſeruans		16
And frome I can the bricht face affy,		
It deuitt me no langare fore to ly,		<small>and when I espy his bright face,</small>

- Nore that loue schuld fleuth In to me finde,
 Bot walkine furth, bewalinge in my mynde 20
I walk forth, bewailing my sad life
 The dredful lyve endurit I to longe,
 Sufferans in loue of forouful harmys stonge,
 The fcharpe dars and the hewy ȝerys,
 Quhill phebus thus horth passith al his speus,
 Vithoutine hope oie traistinge of comfort ,
 So be such meyne fatit was my sort
 Thus in my faull Rolinge al my wo,
 My carful hait carwing cañ In two 28
The sword of love carves my heart
 The derdful fuerd of lowis hot diffire ,
 So be the morow set I was a-fyre
 In felinge of the acese hot *and* colde,
 That haith my hart in sich a fevn holde,
 Only to me thare was nofe vthn cō
 Bot thinkine qhow I schulde my lady pleſ
 The fsharp affay and ek the Inwirt pme
 Of dowblit wo me neulyngis cañ conifrein, 36
 Quhen that I have remembranit one my thocht
 How sche, quhois bewte al my harñ haith wrocht,
 Ne knowuth not how I ame wo begone,
 Nor how that I ame of hue feuandis oñe , 40
 And in my self I cañ nocht fynde the meyne
 In to quhat wyf I fal my wo compleine
 Thus in the feild I walkith to *and* fioo,
 As thochtful wicht that felt of noct bot woo,
 Syne to o gardinge, that wes weil besen, 44
 Of quiche the feild was al depaynt with greñ
 The tendyre and the lusty flouris new
 Up thrōue the greñ vpone thar stalkis grew
 Aȝhane the sone, and thare levis spred,
 Quharwith that al the gardinge was I clede ,
 That pryapus, in to his tyme before,
 In o luftear walkith nevir more , 48
My lady knoweth not how I am wo begone
 [Fol 15]
 And al about enweronyt and Icloft
 One sich o wyf, that none within supposit 52
I walked thus in the field, and came to a well beseen garden
It was closely environed with leaves

- Foie to be feñ with ony vicht thare owt ,
So dide the levis clof it¹ all about 56
Thar was the flour, thar was the queñ alphæft,²
Ryght wering being of the nyctis reft,
Wnclofing gañe the crownel for the day ,
The brycht fone illumynit haith the spray, 60 The sun illumina
The nyctis sobir ande the moft schowris,
As crifcoll terys withong vpone the flouris,
Haith vpwarþith In the lufty are,
The morow makith soft, ameyne, and faire , 64
And the byrdis thar mychty voce out throng,
Quhill al the wood refonite of thar fonge,
That gret confort till ony vicht It wer
That plesſith thame of luftenes to here
Bot gladnes til the thochtful, euer mo
The more he feith, the more he haith of wo
Thar was the garding with the flouris ourfret,
Quich is in pofy fore my lady set, 72 the garden was
That hire Reprefent to me oft befor,
And thane also , thus al day gan be for³
Of thoc'h my goft with torment occupy,
That I became In to one exafy, 76 [Tol 2]
Ore flep, or how I wot , bot fo befell
My wo haith done my livis goft expell,
And in fiche wiþ weil long I can endwr,
So me betid o wondir aventur 80
As I thus lay, Ryght to my spreit vas feñ
A birde, yat was as ony lawrare greñ,
A licht, and fayth in to hir birdas chere ,
“ O woful wrech, that levis in to were ! 84
To fchew the thus the god of loue me fent,
That of thi feruice no thing is content,
For in his court yhoue lewith in diffpar,
And vilfully sufstenis al thi care, 88 “The God of
Love is discon
tent with thee

¹ MS “ clofit ”² May we read “ alecest ” ?³ MS “ befor ”

- And schapith no thinge of thine awn remedie,
 Bot clepith ay and cryith apone dede
 Yhow callith the birdes be morow fro thar bours,
 Yhoue devirth boith the erbis and the flours, 92
 And clepit hyme vnfalþful king of lowe,
 Yow dewirth hyme in to his rigne abufe,
 Yhow tempith hyme, yhoue doith thi self no gud,
 Yhoue are o moñ of wit al destitude 96
 Wot yhoue nocht that al lwns creatwre
 Haith of thi wo in to his hand the cwre?
 And fet yhoue clep one erbis and one treis,
 Sche heris not thi wo, nore ȝhit sche feis , 100
 For none may know the dirknesf of thi thocȝt,
 Ne blamyth her thi wo sche knowith nocht
 And It is weil accordinge It be so
 He suffir harme, that to redref his wo
 Previdith not , for long ore he be fonde,
 Holl of his leich, that schewith not his wound
 And of owid ye autor schall yhow knaw
 Of lufe that feith, for to confel or schow, 108
 The laft he clepith althr-beft of two ,
 And that is futh, and fal be euer mo
 And loue also haith chargit me to fay,
 Set yhoue perfume, ore beleif, ye affay
 Of his feruice, as It wil ryne ore go,
 Prefwme It not, fore It wil not be so ,
 Al magre thine a feruand fchal yow bee
 And as tueching thine aduerfytee, 112
 Complen and sek of the ramed, the cwre,
 Ore, gif yhow likith, furth thi wo endure "
 And, as me thocȝt, I anfuerde aganfe
 Then answered I Thus to the byrde, in wordes schort and plane 120
 " It ganhyth not, as I have harde Recorde,
 The feruand for to disput with ye lord ,
 Bot well he knowith of al my vo the quhy,
 And in quhat wyf he hath me fet, quhar I 124
- Owid says it is better to shew than to conceal love
- [Fol 25]
- As touching thine adverfytee, seek the remedy
- "Love knows the reason of my wo"

- Nore may I not, nore can I not attane,
Nore to hr huenes dare I not complane ”
“ Ful ! ” quod the bird, “ lat be thi nyȝ dispare,
For in this erith no lady is so fare, 128 ‘ Fool said the
So he eftat, nore of fo gret emprise,
That in hire self haith vifdome ore gentrice,
Yf that o wicht, that worthy is to be
Of lovis court, fchew til hr that he 132
Serurh hire in lovis hartly wyȝ,
That fchall thar for hym hating or dispiȝ
The god of love thus chargit the, at fchort,
That to thi lady yhoue thi wo Report , 136 the God of Love
Yf yhoue may not, thi plant fchall yhov vrit
Se, as yhoue came, be maner oft endit
In metir, quich that no man haith fuffpek,
Set oft tyme thai contenyng gret effecc , 140
Thus one fume wyȝ yhow fchal thi wo dwclar
And, for thir fedulis and thir billis are
So generall, and ek fo fchort at lyte,
And fwme of thair is loft the appetit, 144
Sum trety fchall yhoue for yi lady fak,
That wnkouth is, als tak one hand and mak,
Of love, ore armys, or of sum othr thing,
That may hr one to thi Remembryng brynge , 148
Qwiche foundith Not one to no hewynes,
Bot one to gladneȝ and to lusteneȝ,
That yhoue belevis may thi lady pleȝ,
To have hr thonk and be one to hr eȝ, 152 [Fol. 3]
That fche may wit in feruice yhow art one
Faire weil,” quod fche, “ thus fchal yhow the dispone, 156 one that may
And mak thi self als mery as yhoue may,
It helpith not thus fore to wex al way ”
With that, the bird fche haith hr leif tak,
For fere of quich I can onone to wak ,
Sche was ago, and to my self thocht I
Quhat may yis meyne ? quhat may this signify ? 160 Farewell and be
merry
Thereon I awoke
and wondered
what it might
mean

- Is It of troucht, or of Illusioune ?
 Bot finaly, as in conclusioune,
 Be as be may, I fchal me not dischARGE,
 Sen It apperith be of lovis charg , 164
 And ek myne hart noñe oþir biffynes
 Haith bot my ladice seruice, as I geþ ,
 Among al vþthers I fchal one honde tak
 This litil occupatioune for hire sAK 168
 Bot hyme I pray, the mychty gode of loue,
 That fitith hie in to his spir abuf,
 (At command of o wyl quhois viſioune
 My goſt haith takin this opvnioune,) 172
 That my lawboure may to my lady plesþ
 And do wnto hir ladeschip fum eþ ,
 So that my trauell be noct tynt, and I
 Quhat vþtheris fay fetith nothing by 176
 I know it will but
 hurt my name
 when men hear
 my feble negli-
 gence
 For wel I know that, be this worldis fame,
 It fchal not be bot hurting to my name,
 Quhen that thair here my febil negligens,
 That empit is, and bare of eloquens, 180
 Of diſcreſſioune, and ek of Retoryk ,
 The metire and the curang both elyk
 So fere diſcording frome perfeccioune ,
 Quhilk I submyt to the correccioune 184
 Of yaim the quhich that is diſcret and wyls ,
 And enterit is of loue in the seruice ,
 Quhich knouyth that no lovare dare withſtonde,
 Quhat loue hym chargit he mot tak one honde, 188
 Deith, or defam, or ony maner wo ,
 And at this tyme with me It stant rycht fo ,
 As I that dar makine no demande
 To quhat I wot It lykith loue commande 192
 Tueching his chargis, as with al deſtitut,
 Within my mynd ſhortly I conclud
 For to fulfyll, for ned I mot do fo
 Thane in my thocht rolling to and fro 196

I determined to
take in hand this
occupation

I submit my
poem to the cor-
rection of the
wise

[Fol 35]

for I dare not
oppose I ove s
command

Quhare that I myht sum wnkouth mater fynde,		
Quhill at ye laſt it fell in to my mynd		
Of o ſtory, that I befor had fene,		At laſt I thought of the ſtory of Lancelet of the Lake,
That boith of loue and armys can conteñ,	200	
Was of o knycht clepit lancelet of ye laik,		
The fone of bane was, king of albanak ,		
Of quhois fame <i>and</i> worſhipful dedis		
Clerkis in to drueris bukis redis,	204	
Of quhome I thynk her ſum thing for to writ		of whom I here think to write ſomething
At louis charge, and as I cane, endit ,		
Set men tharin fal by experiens		
Know my confait, and al my negligens	208	
Bot for that ſtory is fo paſing larg,		But because my ignorance cannot comprehend the French romance
One to my wit It war fo gret o charg		
For to tranſlait the romans of that knycht ,		
It paſſliſh fare my cunyng and my mycht ,	212	
Myne Ignorans may It not comprehendre ,		
Quharfor thare one I wil me not depend		I ſhall not tell how he was born
How he was borne, nor how his fader deid		
And ek his moder, nore how he was denyed	216	
Efter thare deth, prefumyng he was ded,		
Of al ye lond, nore how he fra that iftede		nor how he was nourished by the Lady of the Lake
In ſacret wyf wnwyft away was tak,		
And nwrfit with ye lady of ye lak	220	
Nor, in his ȝouth, think I not to tell		nor how he was brought to Ar thur's court
The auentouris, quihich to hym befell ,		
Nor how the lady of the laik hym had		
One to the court, quhare that he knycht was mad ,	224	
None wiſt his nome, nore how that he was tak		[Fol 4]
By loue, and was Iwondit to the iftak,		
And throuch <i>and</i> throuch perfit to ye hart,		and pierced to the heart by the beauty of Wanore (Guinevere)
That al his tyme he couth It not aftart ,	228	
For thare of loue he enterit in feruice,		
Of wanore throuch the beute and franchis,		
Through quhois feruice in armys he has vrocht		for whose ſervice he wrought many wonders ,
Mony wonderis, and perellis he has socht	232	

- Nor how he thor, in to his ȝoung cuage,
 Hath awoue, and in to louis rage,
 In the rewenging of o wondit knycht
 That cumyne was in to the court that nycht, 236
- nor how he made
a vow to revenge
a wounded
knight
- who had a broken
sword in his head,
and a truncheon
of a broken spear
in his body,
- In to his hed a brokin¹ fuerd had he,
 And in his body also mycht men see
 The tronfione of o brokine sper that was,
 Quwhich no man out dedenynt to aras , 240
- Nor how he haith the wapnis out tak,
 And his awow apone this wis can mak,
 That he schuld hym Reweng at his poware
 One euery knycht that louth the hurtare 244
- a vow which
caused the death
of many a wight
warrior
- Better thane hym, the quwhich that vas Iwond
 Throw quich awoue in armys hath ben founde
 The deth of mony wereoure ful wicht ,²
 For, fro the wov was knowing of the knycht, 248
- Thare was ful mony o pafage in the londe
 By men of armys kepit to withifond
 This knycht, of quhome tha ben al set afyre
 Thaim to reweng in armys of desir 252
- or how he and
Sir Kay were sent
to defend the lady
of Nohalt,
- Nor how that thane incontynent was fend
 He and fir kay togidder to defend
 The lady of nohalt, nor how that hee
 Gouernit hym thare, nore in quhat degré 256
- or how he con-
quered the Sor-
rowful Castle,
- Nor how the gret pafing vaffolag
 He escheuit, thröue the outragous curag,
 In conquryng of the sorowful castell.
 Nor how he paffith doun in the cauis fell, 260
- [Fol 4b]
or how he rescued
Sir Gawane and
his nine fellows,
- And furth ye keys of Inchantment brocht,
 That al distroyt quwhich that thare vas vroch^t
 Nore howe that he refkewit fir gawane,
 With his ix falouf in to prefone tane , 264
- Nore mony vtherre diuers aduenture,
 Quwhich to report I tak not in my cwre,

¹ MS "abrokin"² The MS wrongly transposes ll 247 and 248

Nor mony assenblay that gawane gart be maid To wit his name , nor how that he hyme hade Wnswif, and hath the worship <i>and</i> empris , Nor of the knyctis in to mony ¹ duer ³ wyl ³ Throuch his awoue that hath thare dethis found , Nor of the sufferans that by louis wounde He in his trawel sufferith auer more , Nor in the quenis presens how tharfor By camelot, in to that gret Revare, He was ner dround I wl It not declare How that he was in louis hewy thocht By dagenet in to the court I-brocht , Nor how the knycht that tyme he cane perfew , Nor of the gyantis by camelot he flew , Nor wl I not her tell the maner how He flew o knycht, by natur of his wow , Off melyholt , nore how in to that toune Thar came one hyme o gret confusione Of pupil <i>and</i> [of] knyctis, al enarmyt , Nor how he thar haith kept hyme wnharmyt , Nor of his worship, nor of his gret prowes , Nor his defens of armys in the pres Nor how the lady of melyhalt yat fche Came to the feild, and pray[1]th hyme that he As to o lady to hir ² his fuerd hath sold , Nor how he was in to hir keping hold , And mony vthir nobil deid also I wil report quharfor I lat ourgo For quho thaim lykith for to fpecyfy , Of one of thaim myc ³ t mak o gret story , Nor thing I not of his hye renown My febil wit to makin menfionue , Bot of the wers that was scharp <i>and</i> strong , Richt perellous, and hath endury long ,	268 272 276 280 284 288 292 296 300	<p>nor of the many 'assemblies' Ga wane held to find out his name ,</p> <p>nor of his suffer ing caused by love a wound</p> <p>nor how he was nearly drowned at Camelot</p> <p>nor how he was brought to court by Dagenet</p> <p>nor of the giants he slew at Came lot</p> <p>nor how he slew a knight of Mely holt ,</p> <p>and there de fended himself against a crowd ,</p> <p>whereupon the lady of Melyhalt prayed him to yield his sword to her and kept him in her power</p> <p>Whoever likes , might make of these things a long story</p> <p>But I think to tell of the wars between Arthur and Galhot</p>
---	---	---

¹ We should perhaps omit "mony "² MS "his"

[Fol 5]

- wherein Lancelot
won renown by
his defence of
Arthur
- and at last made
peace between
the two princes
- I shall also tell
how Venus re-
warded him
- My summary
must end for the
present
- But I pray for
the support of a
very great poet,
- whose name I
may not men-
tion
- for our riming
is but dension,
when his excel-
lence is remem-
bered
- The world knows
his eloquence in
imitating Latin,
- and none can ever
gladden the
world like him
- to him be the
thanks for my
success
- Of Arthur In defending of his lond
Frome galiot, sone of the fair gyonde,
That brocht of knyghtes o paing confiuens ,
- And how lancelot of arthuris hol defens
And of the veris berith the renoun ,
- And how he be the wais of fortoune
Tuex the two princis makith the accorde,
- Of al there mortall weris to concorde ,
- And how that venus, fitng hie abuf,
Reuardith hyme of trauell in to loue,
- And makith hyme his ladice grace to have,
And thankfully his feruice cane refave ,
- This is the mater quwhich I think to tell
Bot ftil he mot rycht with the lady duell,
Quhill tyme cum eft that we schal of hym spek
- This p'oces [now] mot clofne beñ and stek ,
- And furth I wil one to my mater go
- Bot first I pray, and I besek also,
One to the most compilour to support,
- Flour of poyetis, quhois nome I wil report
- To me nor to noñ vthir It accordit ,
- In to our rymyng his nañ to be recordit ,
- For sum fuld deme It of prefumpcioune,
- And ek our rymyng is al bot deryfioune,
- Quhen that remembrit is his excellens,
- So hie abuf that stant in reuerans
- Ye fresch enditing of hys laiting toung
- Out throuch yis world so wid is yroung,
- Of eloquens, and ek of retoryk ,
- Nor is, nor was, nore neuer berith hyme lyk,
- This world gladith of his fuet poetry
- His faul I blyß conferuyt be for-thy ,
- And yf that ony lusty terme I wryt
- He haith the thonk yeroſ, and this endit

304

308

312

316

320

324

328

332



[BOOK I]

- Q**when [that] tytan, withe his lusty heit,
Twenty dais In to the aryeit
Haith maid his courſ, and all withi drierſ hewis
Aparalit haith the feldis and the bewis,
The birdes amyd the erbis *and* the flouris,
And one the branchis, makyne gone thar bouriſ,
And be the morow finging in ther chere
Welcum the lufty feffone of the ſere
In to this tyme the worthi conqueroure
Arthure, wiſh had of al this worlde the floure 336
Of cheuelry auerding to his crown,
So pafing war his knyghtis in ienouune,
Was at carll , and hapynnit fo that hee
Soiornyt well long in that faire cuntree 340
In to whilk tyme In to the court thar heire
None awenture, for wiſh the knyghtis were
Anoit all at the abiding thare
For-why, beholding one the fobir ayre 348
And of the tyme the pafing luſtynes,
Can fo thru knyghtly hartis to encreſ,
That thei fhir kay one to the king haith fende,
Befeching hym he wold wiſhſaiſ to wende 352
To camelot the Cetee, whare that thei
Ware wont to heryng of armys day be day
The king forſuth, heryng thare entent,
To thare defir, be ſchort awyfment, 356
Ygrantid haith , and fo the king preponit
And for to pas hym one¹ the morne diſponit
Bot fo befell hymē [on] that nycht to mett
An aperans, the wiſh one to hiſ ſpreit 360
The king pro
posed to do ſo on
the morrow

¹ MS “to pas one hymē one,” with first “one” lightly crossed out

- That night he
dreamt that his
hur all fell off

which made him
delay his journey
- Again he dreamt
that his bowels
fell out, and lay
beside him
[Fol 6]
- He told the
queen, who an
swered, "No man
should respect
vain dreams"
- The king next
shewed his dream
to a clerk,

who said Sir,
such things tes
tify nothing
- "Yet," replied
he, "I shall not
leave it so
- He bade all the
bishops and
clergy come to
Camelot within
twenty days
- It semyth that of al his hed ye hore
Of fallith and maid desolat, wharfore
The king therof was pensyve in his mynd,
That al the day he couth no resting fynde,
Wich makith hyme his Iorneye to delaye
And so befell apone the thrid day,
The bricht fone, pasing in the weft,
Haith maid his courſ, and al thing goith to Reſt, 372
The king, fo as the fytorie can dewyſ,
He thought aȝeine, apone the famyne wyf,
His vombe out fallith vith his hoil syde
Apone the ground, and ligung hyme besid , 376
Throw wich anon out of his slep he ftert,
Abasit and adred in to his hart
The which be morow one to the qwen he told,
And fhe aȝeine to hyme hath anfuer ȝolde , 380
"To dremys, fir, shuld no man have Refpek,
For thei ben thingis weyn, of non affek"
"Well," quod the king, "god grant It fo befall!"
Arly he roſ, and gert one to hym call
O clerk, to whome that al his hewynes
Tweching his drem fhewith he exprefſ,
Wich anfuer yaf and feith one to the kinge , 384
"Shir, no Record lynch to fuch thing ,
Wharfor now, shir, I praye yow tak no kep,
Nore traitf in to the vanyteris of slep ,
For thei are thingis that afkith no credens,
But caufith of fum maner influens , 388
Empris of thoght, ore fuperfleuytee,
Or than fum other casualytee"
"ȝit," quod the king, "I fal nocht leif It so ,"
And furth he chargit mesingeris to go
Throgh al his Realm, withouten more demande,
And bad them ftratly at thei shulde comande
All the bifhopes, and makyng no delay
The shuld appere be the tuenty day 400

- At camelot, with al thar hol clergy
 That moſt expert war, for to certefye
 A mater tueching to his goſt be nyght,
 The meſag goith furth with the lettres Right 404
- T**he king eft fone, within a htill ſpace,
 His Iornay makith haith frome place to place,
 Whill that he cam to camelot , and there
 The clerkes all, as that the chargit were, 408
- Affembly war, and came to his prefens,
 Of his deſir to vitang the ſentens
 To them that war to hym moſt ſpeciall
 Furth his entent ſhauyth he al hall , 412
- By whois confeil, of the worthieſt
 He cheſith ten, yclepit for the beſt,
 And moſt expert and wiſeſt was ſuppoſit,
 To qwhome his drem all hail he haith diſcloſſit , 416 [Fol 6v]
- The houre, the nyght, and al the circumſtans ,
 Beſichyne them that the ſignifycans
 Thei wald hyme ſhaw, that he mycht reſtung fynde
 Of It, the wiſh that occupeid his mynde 420
- And one of them with¹ al ther holl affent
 Saith, "thire, fore to declare our entent
 Vpone this matere, ye wil ws delay
 Fore to awyſling one to the ix day" 424
- The king ther-to grantith haith, bot hee
 In to o place, that ſtrong was and hye,
 He cloſith them, whare thei may no whare get,
 Vn to the day, the wiſh he to them ſet 428
- Than goith the clerkes fadly to awyſ²
 Of this mater, to feing in what wyſ²
 The kiŋſ drem thei ſhal beſt ſpecefy
 And than the maiftris of aſtronomy 432
- The bookes longyne to ther artis ſet,²
 Not was the bukſ of arachell forgot,

He goes to Came
lot and finds the
clerks assembled

He diſcloses all
to the ten that are
moſt expert,

and beſeeches
them to explain
the dreams

One of them asks
for nine days to
advise upon the
matter.

The king com
plies but shuts
them up in a
ſtrong place

The masters of
astronomy fetch
their books,

¹ MS "ſaith with" (with a very ſlight ſcratch through
"ſaith")

² So in MS Read "ſet"

- and calculate the
disposition of the
planets
- Of nembrot, of danzhelome, thei two,
Of moyfes, *and* of herynes all soo , 436
- They found the
matter heavy for
the king
and doubted if
they should tell
him so
- And seking be ther calcolacioune
To fynd the planet*s* disficioune,
The wich thei fond ware wonder ewill yset
The famyne nyght the king his fweuen met
So ner the point focht thei have the thing,
Thei fond It wonder hewy to the king,
Of wich thing thei waryng in to were
To fliew the king, for dreid of his danger 440
Of aне accorde thei planly haue p^roponit
No worde to shew, and fo thei them disponit
The day is cumyng, and he haith fore them fent,
Befichyne them to fliewing ther entent 444
Than spak they all, and that of an accorde ,
“ Shr, of this thing we can no thing Recorde,
For we can noght fynd in til our sciens
Tweching this mater ony ewydens ” 448
- “ Ere we part
quoth the king
ye shall witness
something
- Being sent for,
they all speake.
Sir we can find
no evidence
- “ Now,” quod the king, “ and be the gloriou loide,
Or we depart ye shall fum thing recorde ,
So pas yhe not, nor fo It fall not bee ”
- “ Than,” quod the clerk*s*, “ grant ws das three ” 452
- [Fol 7]
He grants them
three days more
- The term paſſith, no thing wold the fay,
Wharof the king stondith heuy cherith,
And to the clerk*s* his vifag fo apperith,
That all thei dreid them of the king*s* myght 456
Than faith o clerk, “ sir, as the thrid nyght
Ye dremyt, fo [now] giffis ws delay
The thrid tyme, and to the thrid day ”
- They pray for a
further delay of
three days
- By whilk tyme thei fundyng haith the ende
Of this mater, als far as fhal depend
To ther sciens , yet can thei not awyf
To fliewing to the king be ony wyf 460
- They still refuse
to declare their
thought
- The day is cum, the king haith them befocht,
But one no wyf thei wald declar ther thought , 464

- Than was he wroth in to his self and noyt,
 And maid his wov that thei fhal¹ ben driftloyt 472 The king vows to
 His baronis he commandit to gar tak
 Fyve of them one to the fir-stak,
 And vther fyue be to the gibbot tone , 476
 And the furth w^th the king^s charg ar gone
 He bad them in to secref w^{yf} that thei
 Shud do no harm, but only them affey but secretly
 The clark^s, dredful of the king^s Ire,
 And faw the perell of deth and of the fyre, charges his
 Fyve, as thei can, has grantit to record , knights not to
 That vther herde and ben of ther accorde ,
 And al thei ben yled one to the king,
 And shew hym thus as tueching of this thing 480
 " Shir, fen that we confrenynt ar by myght
 To shaw that wch² we knew no thing ainch,
 For thing to cum preferuth It allan
 To hym the wch is euery thing certaⁿ, 484 They yield at last
 Excep the thing that til our knawleg hee
 Hath ordynat of certan for to bee ,
 Therfor, fhir king, we your magnificens
 - Beseich It turne till ws to non offens, 488
 Nor hald was nocht as lears, thought It fall
 Not in this mater^s, as that we telen shall " " Hold us not as
 And that the king haith grantit them, and thei
 Has chargit one, that one this wif fall feye 492
 " Prefumyth, shir, that we have fundyne so ,
 All erdly honore ye nedis³ moft for-go,
 And them the wch ye moft affy in-tyll
 Shal falye ȝow, magre of ther will , You must forego
 And thus we haue in to this mater^s founde " all earthly
 The king, quhois hart was al wyth dred ybownd,
 And afkit at the clerks, if thei fynde honour
 By there clergy, that stant in ony kynde 500 [Fol 7 b]
 and those on
 whom you most
 rely will fail
 you.

¹ MS "fhat" ² MS "wch that "³ MS "nedift," but see l 518

The king asks if
his destiny can
be altered

Of possibilitee, fore to reforme
His defteny, that stid in such a forme,
If in the hewyne Is preordynat
On such o wiſ his honor to translat

508

They reply that
the matter is
dark

The clerkis faith, "forfuth, and we haue fene
O thing whar of, if we the trouth ſhal men,
Is fo obſcure and dyrk til our clergyne,
That we wat not what It ſhal fignifye,

512

Wich cauſith ws we can It not furth fay"
"Yis," quod the king, "as lykith yow ye may,
For wers than this can nat be faid for me"

A master says
there is no help
but in the true
watery lion, and
in the leech and
in the flower

Thane faith o manifur, "than futhly thus finde we , 516
Thar is no thing fal fucour nor refkew,

God knows what
this ſhould mean

Your worldly honore nedis moſt adew,

520

But throuch the watrye lyone *and* ek fyne,
On throuch the liche *and* ek the wattir fyne,
And throuch the conſeill of the flour , god wot
What this fhude men, for mor ther-of we not"
No word the king anſuerd ayane,

524

The king ſhows
no outward grief,

For al this reſone thinkith bot in weyne
He fhawith outward his contenans

but is not rid
of anxiety all
night

As he therof takith no greuans ,

528

Next day he goes
to the forest

But al the nyght it paſſid nat his thought

The chase

The dais courſ with ful desir he focht,

532

And furth he goith to bring his mynd in reſt

With mony O knyght vñ to the gret foreſt ,

The rachis gon vn-copeſt for the deire,

That in the wodis makith nois *and* cheir

The knychtis, with the grewhundis in await,

Secidh boith the planis and the ſtreit

Doune goith the hart, doune goith the hynd alſo ,

[In to the feld can rufching to and fro]¹

536

The ſwift grewhund, hardy of affay ,

Befor ther hedis no thing goith away

¹ A line must here be lost, but there is nothing to shew this in the MS. The inserted line is imitated from 1 3293

The king of hunting takith haith his spoit,
And to his palace home he can Refort,

540 The king returns

Ayan the noon , and as that he was set
Vith all his noble knyghtes at the met,
So cam ther in an agit knyght, *and hee*
Of gret esstat femyt for to bee ,

[Fol 8]
As they sit at
meat an aged
knight enters
fully armed

Anarmyt all, as tho It was the gyf,
And thus the king he faluft, one this wiſ,

544

“ **S**hir king, one to yow am y fende

Frome the worthiest that in world is kend, 548

That leuyth now of his tyme and age,
Of manhed, wifdome, *and* of hie curag,
Galiot, fone of the fare gyande ,

The knight's
message is that
king Galiot bids
Arthur to yield
to him his king
dom

And thus, at short, he bidis yow your londe
Ye yald hym our, without Impedyment ,
Or of hyme holde, and if tribut and rent
This is my charge at short, whilk if youle left

552

For to fulfill, of al he haith conquest
He sais that he most tendir fhal youle hald.”

By short awys the king his ansuer yald ,

The king refuses

“ Shir knyght, your lordre wondir hie pretendis,

When he to me sic salutatioun sendis ,

560

For I as yit, in tymys that ar gone,

Held never lond excep of god alone,

Nore never thinkith til erthly lord to yef

Trybut nor rent, als long as I may lef ”

564

“ Well,” quod the knyght, “ ful for repenthith me ,
Non may recift the thing the wiche mone bee
To yow, *sir* king, than frome my lord am I

The knight re
plies that his
lord bids him de
fiance and will
invade his land in
a month

With diffyans fent, and be thus refone why ,

568

His purpos Is, or this day moneth day,

With all his oft, planly to affay

Your lond, with mony manly man of were,

And helmyt knyctis, boith with fheld *and* spere ,

And never thinkith to retrwn home whill

That he this lond haith conquest at his will ,

not to return till
he has conquered

and he intends to possess queen Vanour	And ek vanour the quen, of whome that hee Henth report of al this world that fhee In farhed and in wertew doth excede, He bad me fay he thinks to poffede "	576
Arthur returns his defiance	" Schir," quod the king, " your mesag me behufs Of refone and of curtafy excuff , But tueching to your lord <i>and</i> to his oft, His powar [and] his mesag and his boſt, That pretendith my lond for to diftroy, Thar-of as git tak I non anoye ,	580
[fol 8 b]	And fay your lord one my behalf, when hee Haith tone my lond, that al the world shal see That It shal be magre myne entent "	584
The knight de parts lamenting Arthur's adventurous spirit	With that the knycht, withouten leif, is went, And richt as he was pasing to the dure, He faith, " a gode ¹¹ what wykyt aduenture Apperith ! " with that his hors he nome, Two knyctas kepit, waiting his outcome	588
Arthur asks Gawan who Galiot is	The knight is gon, the king he gan Inquere At gawan, and at other knyctas sere, If that thei knew or euer hard recorde Of galiot, and wharof he wes lorde ,	592
Galygantynus of Wales replies,	And ther was non among his knyctas all Which anfuerd o word in to the hall Than galygantynus of walys rafe, That trauelit in diuers londas has,	596
that Galiot is the tallest knight by half a foot of all he ever saw that he is wise, liberal humble	In mony knyctlyt auentur haith ben , And to the king he faith, " fur, I haue sen Galiot, which is the fareſt knycht, And hieſt be half a fut one hycht,	600
	That euer I saw, and ek his men accordith , Hyme lakid nocht that to a lord recordith For vifale of his ag is non than hee, And ful of larges and humlylytee ,	604
		608

¹¹ MS " agod. "

- | | |
|--|--|
| An hart he haith of paing hie curag,
And is not xxiiij ȝer of age,
And of his tyme mekil haith conquerit ,
Ten kingis at his command ar fierit
He wth his men so louit is, y gef ^ȝ ,
That hym to pleȝ is al ther besynes
Not say I this, fir, in to ye entent
That he, nor none wnder the firmament,
Shal pouere haue ayane your maleftee ,
And or thei shuld, this y fey for mee,
Rather I shall knyghtly in to feild
Resaue my deith anarmyt wnder sheld | courageous and
under xxiv years
of age |
| | 612 Ten kings obey
him |
| | 616 |
| This spek y left, "—the king, ayan the morn,
Haith varnit huntars baith with hund <i>and</i> horne,
And arly gan one to the forest ryd,
With mony manly knyghtis by his fid, | The king goes
again to the
chase |
| Hyme for to sport and comfort with the dere,
Set contrare was the fesone of y ^e yere
His most huntyng was atte wyld bore ,
God wot a lufty cuntrie was It thore, | 624 |
| In the ilk tyme ! wel long this noble king
In to this lond haith maid his fuornynge ,
Frome the lady was send o mesinger
Of melyhalt, wch fafh one this maner, | 628 |
| As that the story shewith by recorde
“ T O yow, fir king, as to hir foueran lorde,
My lady hath me chargt for to say | He likes boar
hunting best
[Tol 9.] |
| How that your lond stondith in affray ,
For galhot, fone of the fare gyande,
Enterit Is by armys in your land,
And so the lond and cuntrie he annoyth, | 632 A messenger
comes from the
lady of Melyhalt |
| That quhar he goith planly he distroyth,
And makith al obeisand to his honde,
That nocht is left wnconquest in that lond,
Excep two castellis longing to hir cwre, | to say that Galahad
has entered Ar
thur's land, |
| Wich to defend she may nocht long endure | 640 |
| | and has conquer
ed all but two
castles belongin
to his mistress |
| | 644 |

- Wharfor, *fv.*, in wordis plan *and* shoit,
Ye mon dispone your folk for to support" 648
- The king promises not to delay
lay and inquires the number of the foe
A hundred thousand is the reply
- " Wel," quod the king, " one to thi lady say
The neid is myne, I fall It not delay ,
But what folk ar thei nemmyt for to bee,
That in my lond is cumyne in sich degree ? "
- " An hundredreth thoufand boith vith sheld *and* spere
On hors ar armyt, al iedy for the were " 652
- " Wel," quod the king, " and but delay this nycht,
Or than to morn as that the day is lycht,
I shal remuf , ther shal no thing me mak
Impediment, my Iorney for to tak " 656
- The king says he will set off that very night
- Than feith his knyctis al with one assent
" Shir, that is al contrare ou entent ,
For to your folk this mater is wnwift,
And ye ar here our few for to recift 660
- His knights advise him to wait till he has raised an army
- 3one power, and youre cuntre to defende ,
Tharfor abid, and for your folk ye send,
That lyk a king and lyk a wenour
Ye may fuften in armys your honoure " 664
- He refuses to wait longer than till the morrow
- " Now," quod the king, " no langer that I ȝeme
My crowne, my septure, nor my dyademe,
Frome that I here, ore frome I wnderstand,
That ther by fors be entrit in my land 668
- Fol 95]
- Men of armys, by strenth of vvolens,
If that I mak abid or refydens
In to o place langar than o nycht,
For to defend my cuntre *and* my ryght " 672
- The king that day his mesage haith furth sent
Through al his realme, and fyne to rest is went
- U**p goith the morow, wp goith the brycht day,
Wp goith the sone in to his flesh aray , 676
- The king arises next morning without delay,
- Richt as he spred his bemys frome northeft,
The king wpraf withouten more areft,
And by his awn conseil and entent
His Iornaye tuk at short awyfment 680

And but dulay he goith frome place to place
Whill that he cam nere whare¹ the lady was,

• And in one plane, apone o reuer fyde,

He lichtit doun, and then he can abide ,

And yit w^t hym to batell fore to go

Vij thousand fechters war ther, and no mo

This was the lady, of qwhome befor I tolde,

That lancelot haith in to hir kepinge holde ,

But for to tell his pasing hewynesse,

His peyne, his forow, and his gret distreffe

Of prefone and of loues gret suppris,

It war to long to me for to dewys

When he remembrith one his hewy charge

Of loue, wharof he can hym not disch^rage,

He wepit and he forowith in his chere,

And euery nyght femyth hym o yere

Gret peite was the forow that he maad,

And to hymself apone this wi^f he faade

and reaches a
plain by the river
side

684

having only seven
thousand with
him

Lancelot having
been imprisoned
by the lady of
Melyhalt

692

" **Q**what haue y gilt, allace ! or qwhat deferuit ?

Q That thus myne hart shal vondit ben and carwit

One by the fuord of double peine and wo ?

My comfort and my plesans is ago,

To me is nat that shuld me glaid referuit

Lancelot's la
ment

701

his pleasure is
gone

I curf the tyme of myne Natuntee,
Whar in the heuen It ordynyd was for me,

In all my lyue neuer til haue eef^s,

But for to be example of difef^s,

And that apperith that euery vicht may see

704 he curses his
natal day

708

Sen thelke tyme that I had fufficians
Of age, and chargit thoght^s sufferans,

Nor neuer I continewite haith o day

With out the Payne of thoght^s hard aslay ,

Thus goith my youth in tempeft and penans

he has never
spent a single
day free from
anxiety

712

¹ MS "whare that," with slight scratch through "that"

and is now in
prison
[Fol 10]

and invokes
Death

Thus the smart
of love's sorrow
pricketh him

He is kept by her
from the exercise
of knighthood

and there we let
him dwell

Meanwhile
Galiot besieged a
castle

His army had pa-
villions tents and
iron wheeled
chariots

When he heard of
Arthur's coming

he assembled his
council

And now my body is In prefone brought,
But of my wo, that in Regard is noght,

The witch myne hart felith euer more

O deth, allace ! whi hath yow me forbore
That of remed haith the fo long besought !"

716

Thus neu'remore he lesith to compleine,
This woful knyght that felith not bot peine ,
So prekith hym the fmert of loues fore,
And euery day encressith more and more
And with this lady takine is alfo,

720

And kepit whar he may no whare go
To haunt knychthed, the witch he moste defint ,
And, thus his hart with dowbl wo ysfirte,
We lat hym duel here with the lady stll,
Whar he haith laisere for to compleine his fyll

724

And galiot in this meyne tyme he laie
By strong myght o castell to affay,
With many engyne and diuers wais fere,
For of fute folk he had a gret powere
That bowis bur, and vther Instrumentis,

728

And with them lede ther palzonis and ther tentis,
With mony o stong chariot and cher
With yrne qwhelis and barris long and sqwar ,
Well stufit with al maner apparell
That longith to o fege or to batell ,
Whar-with his oft was clofis al about,
That of no strent nedith hym to dout

732

And when he hard the cumyne of the king,
And of his oft, and of his gaderyng,

736

The witch he reput but of febil myght

740

Ayanis hym for to fussten the ficht,
His confell holl assenblit he, but were,

Ten knightis with other lordis fere,
And told theme of the cuming of the king,

744

And afkit them there confell of that thung

748

- Hyme thought that it his worchip wold degrade,
If he hym self in propir persone raide
Enarmyt ayane fo few menye
As It was told arthur[as] fore to bee , 752
And thane the kyng-An-hundereth-knychtas cold,
(And so he hot, for neuermore he wolde
Ryd of his lond, but In his cumpany
O hundre knyghtas ful of chuellry) 756
He faith, "shir, ande I one hond [may] tak,
If It you pleſ, this Iorney fhal I mak "
Quod galot, "I grant It yow, but ye
Shal first go ryd, yone knychtas oft and see " 760
With-outen more he ridith our the plan,
And faw the oft and is returnyd ayan ;
And callit them mo than he hade sen, for why
He dred the reprefe of his cumpany 764
And to his lord apone this wys faith hee,
" Shir, ten thouifand y ges them for to bee "
And galot haith chargit hym to tak
Als fell folk, and for the feld hym mak. 768
And so he doith and haith them wel Arayt ,
Apone the morne his banaris war displayt
Up goth the trumpetas with the clarounis,
Ayane the feld blawen furth ther fownis, 772
Furth goth this king with al his oft anon
Be this the word wes to king arthur gone,
That knew no thing, nor wift of ther entent,
But sone his folk ar one to armys went , 776
But arthur by Report hard saye
How galot non armys bur that day,
Wharfor he thought of armys nor of fheld
None wald he tak, nor mak hym for the feld
But gawane haith he clepit, was hym by,
In qwhome Ragnith the flour of cheuelry ,
And told one what mane, and one what wyf
He shuld his batelles ordand and dewys , 780
who thought it
would degrade
him to fight in
proper person
against so few
[Fol 10 b]
The king of a
hundred knights
(Malegnis) un
dertakes the ex
plot
who reconnoitres
Arthur's host
and says it is
10 000 strong
whereon Galot
charges him to
take the same
number
Galot's host set
out
Arthur's host don
their armour
Arthur hearing
that Galot is un
armed, will not
arm himself
but calls Gawan
and tells him how
to order his bat
talions

	Befechung hyme, [hyme] wiſly to for see Aȝaine thei folk, wiche was far mo than hee He knew the charg and pasſith one his way Furth to his horſ, and makith no dulay , The clarionis blew and furth goth al onoñ, And our ye watter and the furd ai goſie Within o playne vpone that other fyd Ther gawan gon his batellis to dewide, As he wel couth, and set them in aray, Syne with o manly contynans can fay,	788
Gawane and his men cross over the water at the ford		
He harangues his men	“ Ye falowis wiche of the round table beñ, Through al this erth whois fam is hard and fen, Remembrith now It stondith one the poynt, For why It lyith one your speris poynt, ¹ The well-fare of the king and of our londe , And fen the fucour lyith in your honde, And hardement is thing shall moſt awaill Frome deth ther men of armys in bataill, Lat now your manhed and your hie curaige The pryd of al thir multitude affuage , Deth or defence, non other thing we wot ”	796
[Tol 11]		
Maleginis and all his host come over the plain, and Gawane sends a company against them	In myde the borde, ² and feſtinit in the ſtell The fperithis poynt, that bitith fsharp and well , Bot al to few thei war, and mycht nocth left This gret Rout that cummyth one fo faſt Than haith fir gawan fend, them to ſupport, One othr batell with one knyghtly ſorte , And fyne the thrid, and fyne the ferde alfo , And fyne hymelf one to the feld can go , When that he fauſh thar latter batell ſteir, And the ten thouſand cummyne al thei veir ,	800 804 808
But they were all too few where- fore Gawane sends a ſecond company		
then a third then a fourth and then ſets out himſelf to reſiſt the 10,000		
		812
		816

¹ At the bottom of this page appears for the first time a catchword, which is—"The wel fare" ² Or "berde"

- Qwhar that of armes prewit he so well,
His ennemys gane his mortall [ftrokis] fell 820
He goith ymong them in his hie curage,
As he that had of knyghted the wfage,
And couth hyme weill *conten in* to on hour,
Aȝaine his ftrok refistit non armour, 824
And mony knycht, that worth ware and bolde,
War thore with hyme of arthuris houfhold,
And knyghtly gan one to the feld them bere,
And mekil wrought of armys In to were , 828
Sir gawan than vpone fuch wyl hym bure,
This othere goith al to discumfitoure ,
Sewyne thousand fled, *and* of the feld thei go,
Whar of this king in to his hart was wo, 832
For of hyme self he was of hie curage
To galot than fend he *in* mesag,
That he thuld help his folk for to defende ,
And he to hym hath xxx^{te} thousand sende , 836
Whar of this king gladith in his hart,
And thinkith to Reweng all the smart
That he to for haith suffirrit and the Payne
And al his folk returnyt Is ayayne [Fol 11 b]
Atour the feld, and cummyne thilk as hail¹,
The fwyft horȝ goith firȝt to the affall
This noble knyght that feith the grete forȝ
Of armyt men, that cummyne vpone horȝ, 844
To giddir femblit al his falowfship,
And thoght them at the fsharp poynt to kep,
So that thar harȝ shal be ful deir yboght
This vtherre folk with straucht courȝ hath focht 848
Out of aray atour the larg felld ,
Thar was the ftrokis festnit *in* the shelde,
Thei war Refasuit at the sferis end
So arthuris folk can manfully defend , 852
Arthuris folk re
ceive them man
fully,

¹ MS "thilk as (Rayne) hail," as if it were at first intended to find a rime to "ayayne "

- The formeſt can thar lyues end conclude,
 Whar ſone afſemblit al the multitudine
 Thar was defens, ther was gret affaill,
 Richt wonderfull and ſtrong was y^e bataill, 856
- but ſustain mucca
pain*
- Whar arthuris folk fuſtenit mekil payn,
 And knychtly them defendit haith aȝaine
 Bot endur thei mycht, apone no wyf,
 The multitude and ek the gret ſuppreſſ , 860
- and cannot en
dure againſt ſo
many*
- But gawan, wiſh that ſetith al his payn
 Vpone knyghthed, defendid fo aȝaine,
 That only in the manhede of thiſ knyght
 His folk reſofit them of his gret myght, 864
- And ek abafit hath his ennemys,
 For throw the feld he goith in fuch wyf,
 And in the pref ſo manfully them feruth,
 His fuerd atwo the helmys al to kerwith, 868
- Gawane carves
helmets in two,
and ſmites heads
off shoulders,*
- The hedes of he be the fhoulderis fmat,
 The horſ goith, of the maifter defolat
 But what awaileth al his beſynes,
 So ſtrong and fo inſufferable vas the pref ? 872
- but hiſ men re
cross the ford to
go to their lodges*
- His folk are paſſit atour the furdis ilkon,
 Towart thei bretis and to thei luges gon ,
 Whar he and many worthy knyght alſo
 Of arthuris houſ endurit mekill wo, 876
- That neuer men mar in to armys vrogh
 Of manhed, ȝit was It al for noght
- [Fol 12]
- Gawane fights
alone till night,*
- Thar was the ſtrength, ther was the paſing myght
 Of gawan, wiſh that whill the dark nyght 880
- when Galotis folk
return home*
- Befor the luges fauſt al hyme aloñ,
 When that his falowis entrin ware ilkon ,
 On arthuris half war mony tan and flan ,
 And galotis folk Is hame returnyd aȝaine, 884
- For it was lait , away the oftaſ ridith,
 And gawan ȝit apone his horſ abidith,
 With fuerd in hond, when thei away var gon,
 And ſo for wrocht hys lyummys ver ilkon, 888

- | | |
|--|--|
| And wondit ek his body vp and doun, | |
| Vpone his horſ Right thore he fel in fwoune , | Gawane swoons
upon his horse |
| And ther hymē tuk <i>and</i> to his lugyne bare, | |
| Boith king and qwen of hymē vare <i>in</i> diſpare , | 892 The king and
queen fear he has
brought himself
to confusion |
| For ther ſuppoſit, throw marwellis that he vroght, | |
| He had hymēſelf to his conſuſioune broght | |
| [T]his ¹ was nere by of melyhalt, the hyll, | |
| Whar lanſeclot ȝit was with the lady ſtill | 896 |
| The knychtis of the court [can] paſing home , | |
| This ladus knychtis to hr palice com, | |
| And told to hr, how that the feld was vent, | |
| And of gawan, and of his hardyment, | 900 The lady of Mely
halt hears of Ga-
wane's deeds |
| That merwell was his manhed to behold , | |
| And fone thur titthiŋgs to the knycht was told, | |
| That was with wo and hewyneſ oppref特 , | |
| So noyith hymē his fuorne and his reſt, | 904 |
| And but dulay one for o knycht he ſend, | |
| That was moft ſpeciall with the lady kend | |
| He comyne, and the knycht vn to hymē ſand, | |
| "Dirpleſ yow not, ſir, be ȝhe not ill paid, | 908 |
| So homly thus I yow exort to go, | |
| To gare my lady ſpekk o word or two | |
| With me, that am a carful preſonere " ² | |
| "Sir, your commandē y fhall, withouten were, | 912 |
| Fulfil," and to his lady paſſit hee | |
| In lawly wyſ besiching hr, that fhe | |
| Wald grant hymē to pas at his requeſt, | |
| Vnto hr knycht, ſtood wnder hr areſt , | 916 |
| And fhe, that knew al gentilleſ aright, | |
| furth to his chamber paſſit wight ³ the licht | |
| A nd he aroſ and falut Curtalſy | |
| The lady, and faid, "madem, her I, | 920 |
| Your preſonere, beſekith yow that ȝhe | |
| Wold merfy and compaſſione have of me, | |

¹ See note to this line.

² MS "prisonerere" ³ Read "with" (?)

	And mak the ranfone wiche that I may yeif, I waſt my tyme in presoune thus to leife For why I her on be report be told, That arthur, with the flour of his houfholde, Is cummyne here, and in this cuntre lyis, And stant In danger of his ennemyis, And haith affemblit , and eft this fhalte bee Within fhort tyme one new affemblee Thar-foi, my lady, y youe grace besch, That I mycht pas, my Ranfon for to fech ,	928
presuming that some of Arthur's knights will pay it	Fore I p'efume thar longth to that foit That louid me, and fhal my nede supporit "	932
She replies that she does not want a ransom but has imprisoned him for his guilt	" S hire knyght, It stant nocth in fiche dugree , It is no ranfone wiche that caufith me To holden yow, or don yow fiche offens , It is your gilt, It is your wiolens, Whar of that I desir no thing but law, Without report your awñ trefpas to knaw "	936
He prays for pardon	" Madem, your plafance may ye wel fulfill Of me, that am in p'efone at your will Bot of that gilt, I was for til excusf, For that I did of werrey nede behwȝ, It tuehit to my honore and my fame ,	940
and begs for liberty	I mycht nocth lefe It but hurtling of my nam, And ek the knyght was mor to blam than I But ye, my lady, of your cuiteffy, Wold ȝe deden my Ransoune to refaue, Of prefone fo I my libertee myght haue,	944
or at least to be allowed to go to the next battle,	Y ware ȝolde euermore [to be] your knyght, Whill that I leif, with al my holl myght And if fo be ye lykith not to ma My ranfone, [madem,] if me leif to ga	952
under a promise to return at night	To the affemble, wiche fal be of new , And as that I am faithful knyght and trew, At nyght to yow I enter shall azaine, But if that deth or other lat certaiñ,	956

- Throw wîch I [may] have fuch Impediment,
That I be hold,¹ magre myne entent " 960 [fol 13]
 " Sir knyght," quod she, " I grant yow leif, withthy
Your name to me that þe wil specify" She consents, if
he will specify to
her his name
- " Madem, as ȝit, futly I ne may
Duclar my name, one be no maner way , 964
 But I promyt, als faft as I haue tyme
Conuenient, or may vith outen cryme,
I shall," and than the lady faith hym tyll,
 " And I, schir knyght, one this condicione will 968
 Grant yow leve, so that ye oblift bee
For to Return, as ye haue said to me"
 Thus thei accord, the lady goith to reft,
 The lone discending cloft in the veft , 972
 The ferd day was dewyfis for to bee
 Betuex the oftis of the affemblee
A nd galot Richt arly by the day,
A yane the feld he can hys folk aray , 976
 And fourty thoufand armyt men haith he,
 That war not at the oþur affembly,
 Commandit to the batell for to gon ,
 " And I my-self," quod he, " shal me difpone 980
 On to the feild againe the thrid day ,
 Whar of this were we shal the end affay "
A nd arthurs folk that come one euery fyd,
A He for the feld can them for to prouide, 984 Arthur also pro
vides his men for
the field
 Wîch wane to few againe the gret affere
 Of galot ȝit to fuften the were
 The knyghtis al out of the cete rof
 Of melyholt, and to the femble gois 988 The knights of
Melyhaft join
him
 And the lady haith, in to facret wyf,
 Gart for hur knyght and prefoner dewyf
 In red al thing, that ganith for the were ,
 His curfeur red, so was boþh scheld and spele 992 The lady secretly
provides Lance
lot with a red
courser and a
shield and spear,
both red also

¹ MS "behold"

*And he, to qwham the piefone hath ben fmaſt,
With glaide deſir apone his curfour ſtart,*

*He rides towards
the field and
halts in a plain
by the river ſide*
*Towart the feld anon he gan to ryd,
And in o plan howt one reuer ſyde* 996
This knycht, the wiſch that long haith ben in cag,

*Lancelot is en
couraged, ſeeing
the bliſte morn,
the mead, the
river the green
woods and the
knights and ban
ners*
*He grew in to o fresh and new curage,
Seing the morow blythfull and amen,
The med, the Reuer, and the vodis gren,
The knychtis in [ther] armys them arayinge,
The baners ayaine the feld diſplayng,* 1000
Fol 18 b]

*His ȝouth in ſtrength and in proſperytee,
And fyne of luſt the gret aduerſytee¹* 1004
Thus in his thocht remembryng at the laſt,

*Caſting his eyes
aſide he ſees the
queen looking
over a parapet*
*Afterward one fyd he gan his Ey to caſt,
Whar our a berteres² lying haith he ſen
Out to the feld luking was the qwen ,
Sudandy with that his goſt aftart* 1008

*Love catches him
by the heart*
*Of loue anone haith caught hym by the hart ,
Than faſth he, " How long fhall It be ſo,
Loue, at yow fhall wirk me al thi wo ?* 1012
*Apone thi wylf to be Infortunat,
Hir for to ſeue the wiſch thei no thing wate
What fufferance I in hir wo endure,
Nor of my wo, nor of myne aduenture ?* 1016

*He counſels his
heart to help it
ſelf at need,*
*And I wnworthy ame for to attane
To hir presens, nor dare I noȝht complane
Bot, hart, ſen at yow knewith thei is here,
That of thi lyue and of thi deith is ſtere,
Now is thi tyme, now help thiſelf at neid,
And the dewod of euery point of dred,
That cowardy be none In to the ſen,
Fore and yow do, yow knowis thi peyne, I weyn , 1024
Yow art wnable euer to attane
To hir mercy, or cum be ony mayne*

¹ May we read "duerſytee"?

² MS "abertes"

- Tharfor y red hir thonk at yow differue,
Or in hir presens lyk o knyght to fterf" 1028 and to deserve
her thanks or die
- With that confusit with an hewy thocht,
Wich ner his deith ful oft tyme haith hymē socht,
Deuoydit was his spritis and his goſt,
He wiſt not of hymē ſelf nor of his oſt, 1032 Confused with a
heavy thought
- Bot one his horſ, als ſtill as ony ſton
When that the knyghtis armyt war ilkon,
To warnnyng them vp goith the bludy fown,
And euery knyght vpone his horſ is bown , 1036 he [ſits] on his
horse as ſtill as
ſtone
- Twenty thoufand armyt men of were
The king that day he wold non armys bere ,
His batellis ware devyſit euer ilkon,
And them foibad out ouer the furdes to gon 1040 The bugles are
blown and the
knights are ready
on horseback
20,000 in number
- Bot frome that ther ther ennemys haith ſen,
In to ſuch wys ther couth them noght fuſten ,
Bot ovr ther went vithouten more delay,
And can them one that oyer ſid aſſay 1044 [Fol 14]
- The red knyght ſtill in to his hewy thoght
Was hufyng ſit apone the furd, and noght
Wiſt of hymē ſelf , with that a harrold com ,
And ſone the knyght he be the brydill nom , 1048 The red knight
ſtill halting by
the ford, a herald
ſeizes his bridle
and bids him
awake
- Saying, "awalk ! It is no tyme to ſlep ,
Your worſhip more expedient vare to kep "
No word he fpak, fo prikith hymē the ſmart
Of hevynes, that ſtood vnto his hart 1052
- Two ſcrewis cam with that, of quhich [that] on
The knyghtis ſheld rycht frome his hals haith ton ,
That vthr watter takith atte laſt ,
And in the knyghtis wentail haith It caſt , 1056 Two ſhrews next
approach one
takes his ſhield
off his neck
the other casts
water at his ven
tale which
causes him to
wink and arouſe
himſelf
- When that he felt the vatter that vas cold ,
He wonk, and gan about hymē to behold ,
And thinkith how he fum-quhat haith myſgoñ
With that his ſpere In to his hand haith ton , 1060
- Goith to the feild vithouten voidis more ,
So was he vare whare that there cam before , He goes to the
field and ſees the
fiſt-conquest
king

- O manly man he was in to al thing,
 And clepit was the ferst conquest king 1064
 The Red knyght with [the] spurus smat the sted,
 The tother cam, that of hym hath no drede ,
 With ferſ curag ben the knyghtes met,
 They meet 1068
 The red knight though shield less, overthrows his foe
 His hawbrek helpit, suppos he had no fcheld
 And he the king in to the fcheld haith ton,
 That horſ and man boith to the erd ar gon 1072
 Than to the knyght he cummyth, that haith tan
 His fheld, to hym delueſith It ayane,
 Besiching hym that of his Ignorance,
 That knew hym nat, as takith no grawance 1076
 The knyght his feheſ[1]d but mor delay haith tak,
 And let hym go, and no thing to hym spak
 Than ther the ¹ wiche that fo at cith haith fen
 Ther lord, the ferst conquest king, y meñ, 1080
 In haift ther cam, as that ther vai agrevit,
 And manfully ther haith ther king Releuit
 [A]nd Arthurs folk, that lykith not to byde,
 [Fol 14 b] 1084
 In goith the spurſ in the stedſ syde
 To giddir thar aſemblit al the oft
 At whois meting many o knyght was loft
 The batell was richt crewell to behold,
 The battle was right cruel to be held
 Of knyghtis wiche that haith there lyvis 3olde 1088
 One to the hart the spere goith throw the fcheld,
 The knyghtis gaping lyth in the feld
 The red knyght, byrnyng in loues fyre,
 Goith to o knyght, als fwift as ony vyre, 1092
 The wiche he perfit through and through the hart ,
 The spere is went , with that anon he start,
 And out o fuerd in to his hond he tais ,
 Lyk to o lyone in to the feld he gais, 1096

The red knight loses his spear,
 but draws his sword, and roams
 the field like a lion

¹ MS "thei," altered to "thee," which is still wrong

- In to his Rag fmyting to and fro
 Fro fum the arm, fro fum the nek in two,
 Sum in the feild lyng is in fwoun,
 And sum his fuerd goith to the belt al doune
 For qwhen that he beholdith to the qwen,
 Who had ben thore his manhed to haue sen,
 His doing in to armys and his myght,
 Shwld fay in world war not fuch o wight
 His falouship siche comfoit of his dede
 Haith ton, that thei ther ennemys ne dread ,
 But can them-self ay manfoly conten
 In to the stour, that hard was to fusten ,
 For galyot was O pasing multitude
 Of prewit men in armys that war gude,
 The wch can with o fresch curag affaill
 Ther ennemys that day In to batell ,
 That ne ware not the vorfship *and* manhede
 Of the red knycht, in perell and in dreid
 Arthur's folk had ben, vith-outen vere ,
 Set thei var good, thei var of smal powere
 And gawan, wch gart bryng hymself befor
 To the bertes, set he was vondut sore,
 Whar the qwen vas, and whar that he mycht see
 The manere of the oft and assamble ,
 And when that he the gret manhed haith sen
 Of the red knycht, he faith one to the qwen,
 " Madem, zone knyght in to the armys Rede,
 Nor neuer I hard nore faw in to no sted
 O knycht, the wch that in to schortar space
 In armys haith mor forton nore mor grace ,
 Nore betir doith boith with sper and fcheild,
 He is the hed and comfort of our feild "
 " Now, sver, I traist that neuer more vas fen
 No man in feild more knyghtly hymself conten ,
 I pray to hymself that euery thing hath cure,
 Saif hymself fro deth or wykit aduenture "
- 1100 Some he cleaves to the belt
- 1104 His felow's take comfort from his deeds,
- 1108 though Gahot's host was a sur passing multitude
- 1112 Had it not been for the manhood of the red knight Arthur's folk had been in peril
- 1116 Gawane is led to the parapet,
- 1120
- 1124 and saith to the queen that none ever did better than yon red knight
- 1128 [Fol 15] The queen prays for Lancelot
- 1132

- The field was
perilous on both
sides,

from early morn
till the sun had
gone down
- Every knight
then returns
home and the red
knight privily
goes back to the
city
- Arthur seeing
the multitude of
Galiot's men re-
calls his dream,
saying,
- 'My men now
fail me at need
- Galiot tells his
council
- that there is no
honour in con-
quering Arthur
- and proposes a
twelvemonth's
truce
- The feild It was ryght perellus and strong
On boith the sydis, and continewit long,
Ay from the lone the varldis face gan licht
Whill he was gone *and cumyne* vas the nycht , 1136
And than o forþ thei mycht It not astart,
On euer y syd behouit them depart
The feild is don and ham goith euyer knycht,
And prevaly, unwift of any wicht, 1140
The way the red knycht to the cete tans,
As he had hecht, *and in his* chambre gais
When arthure hard how the knycht Is gon,
He blamyt foie his lordis euerlilk-one , 1144
And oft he haith remembrit in his thoght,
What multitud that galiot had broght ,
Seing his folk that waie so ewyl aiayt,
In to his mynd he stondith al affrayt,
And faith, " I traist ful futh It fal be founde
My drem Richt as the clerkis gan expounde ,
For why my men faulzeis now at neid,
My-self, my londe, in perell and in dreide " 1148
And galiot vpone hie worship set,
And his confell anon he gart be fet,
To them he faith, " with arthur weil ze see
How that It istant, and to qwhat degie, 1152
Aȝanis ws that he is no poware ,
Wharfor, me think, no worship to ws ware
In conquerying of hym, nor of his londe,
He haith no strenth, he may ws not vithftonde 1156
Wharfor, me think It best is to delay,
And resput hym for a tuelmonieth day,
Whill that he may assemble al his myght ,
Than is mor worship aȝanis hym to ficht ,"
And thus concludit thought hym for the best
The very knyctis passing to there Reift ,
Of melyholt the ladeis knyctis ilkone
Went home, and to hir presens ar theri gon , 1160
1164
1168

- At qwhome ful fone than gan fcho to Inquere,
And al the maner of the oftis till spere
How that It went, and in what mane^r wyf,
Who haith moft worfchip, *and* who is moft to pryst?
“ Madem,” quod thei, “ O knyght was In the feild,
Of Red was al his armour and his fheld,
Whois manhed can al otheris to exced,
May nan report in armys half his deid , 1176
Ne wor his worfchip, fhortly to conclud,
Our folk of help had ben al deftitud
He haith the thonk, the vorschip in hyme lyis,
That we the feld defendit in fiche wyf ” 1180
The lady thane one to hir felf haith thocht,
“ Whether Is ȝone my prefonar, ore noght?
The futhfaſtneſſ that shal y wit onon ”
When euery wight vn to ther Reſt war gon, 1184
She clepith one hir cwsynes ful nere
Wich was to hir moft ſpeciall and dere,
And faith to hir, “ qwheyar if yone bee
Our prefoner, my consell Is we ſee ” 1188
With that the maden In hir hand hath ton
O torche, and to the ftabille ar thei gon ,
And fond his ſted lying at the ground,
Wich wery was, ywet with mony wounde 1192
The maden faith, “ vpone this horſ is fen,
He in the place quhar strokis was hath beñ ,
And ȝhit the horſ It is nocht wiſh that hee
Furth with hyme hade ,”—the lady faid, “ per dee,
He vſyt haith mo horſ than one or two ,
I red one to his armys at we go ”
Tharwith one to his armys ar thei went ,
Thei fond his helm, thei fond his hawbrek rent, 1200
Thei fond his fheld was frusched al to nocht ,
At fchort, his armour In ſiche wyf vas vrocht
In euery place, that no thing was left haill,
Nore neuer eft accordith to bataill 1204
- The lady of Mely
holt asks her
knight who hath
won most honour
- [Fol 105]
- They reply that
a red knight had
exceeded all
others
- The lady wonders
if her prisoner is
meant
- She calls her
cousin,
- who takes a
torch and they
go to the stable
- and find his ſteed
wounded.
- Next they view
his armour
- and find his hauberk rent, and his
shield frusched all
to naught

- They think he has
well used his
armour
- Than faith the lady to hir eufyneſ,
“ What fal we fay, what of this mate, gef? ”
“ Madem, I fay, ther have nocht ben abwſyt,
He that them bur ſhortly he has them vſyt ” 1208
- They next visit
the knight him
ſelf
- “ That may ȝe fay, ſuppos the beſt that lewis,
Or moft of worſhip in til armys prewſis,
Or ȝhit haith ben in ony tyme befoinſ,
Had them in feld in hiſ maſt curag boin ” 1212
- [Fol 15]
- who was now
asleep
- “ Now,” quod the lady, “ will we paſſ, and ſee
The knyght hymſeſelf, and ther the futh may we
Knaw of thiſ thing ” Incontynent them¹ boith
Thir ladeis vn to hiſ chambre goith 1216
- The lady ſeſt obſerves hiſ
breast and ſhoulders bloody hiſ
face hurt and hiſ
fists swollen
- The knyght al very fallyng was on ſlep ,
This maden paſſith In, and takith kep
Sche fauch hiſ breſt wth al hiſ ſchowderis bare,
That bludy war and woundit hei and thare , 1220
Hiſ face was al to hurt and al to ſhent,
Hiſ newis fwellyng war and al to Rent
Sche fmylyt a lyt, and to hir lady faid,
“ It femyth weill thiſ knyght hath ben affaid ” 1224
- The lady next obſerves him,
- and is ſmitten to
the heart by the
dart of love,
- and prayſ her
cousin to draw
aſide while ſhe
kisses the knight
- Her cousin re
proves her,
- lest the knight
ſhould awake
- The lady fauch, and iewit in hiſ thoſt
The knyghtis worſhip wiſh that he haith vroght
In hire Remembrance loues fyre dairt
With hot defyre hiſ ſmat one to the hart , 1228
And then a quhill, with outen wordz mo,
In to hir mynd thinking to and fro,
She ſtudent fo, and at the laſt abraid
Out of hir thoſt, and ſudandy thus faid, 1232
“ With draw,” quod ſhe, “ one fyd a lyt² the lyght,
Oi that I paſſ that I may kyſſ the knyght ”
“ Madem,” quod ſche, “ what is It at ȝe men? ”
Of hie worſhip our mekill have ȝe ſen 1236
So ſone to be ſupprifit with o thoſt
What is It at ȝe think? preſwm ȝe nocht
That if yon knyght wil walkin, and perſur,

¹ “then” (?)² MS “alyt”

- He fhal yarof no thing bot ewill confaif , 1240
 In his entent Ruput yow therby
 The ablare to al lychtneſ and foly ?
 And blam the more al vtheris in his mynd,
 If your gret wit in sich desire he fynde ?" 1244
 " Nay," quod the lady, " no thing may I do
 For sich o knyght may be defam me to " The lady replies
 " Madem, I wot that for to loue yone knyght,
 Confidir his fame, his worſhip, and his mycht , 1248 Her cousin next
 And to begyne as worſhip wil dewyf,
 Syne he ayaine mycht lowe yow one fuch wyf,
 And hold yow for his lady and his loue,
 It war to yow no maner of Reprwe 1252
 But quhat if he appetit be and thret
 His hart to lowe, and ellis whar y fet ? What if he loves
 And wel y wot, madem, if It be so,
 His hart hym sal not suffi to loue two , 1256 another ?
 For noble hart wil have no dowbilneſ , [Fol 165]
 If It be fo, þe tyne yowr low, I geſ ,
 Than is your ſelf, than is your loue Refuſit,
 Your fam is hurt, your gladneſ is concludit 1260
 My confell is, therfore, you to abſten
 Whill that to yow the werray Rykt be ſen
 Of his entent, the wiſ ful fon þe may
 Have knawlag, If yow lykith to affay " 1264
 So mokil to hir lady haith fhe vroght
 That at that tyme fhe haith Returnyt hir thocht She persuades
 And to hir chambre went, withouten more, the lady to return
 Whar loue of new affaith hir ful ſore 1268 to her chamber
 So well long thei ſpeking of the knyght,
 Hir cuiſynace hath don al at fhe mycht without further
 For to expel that thing out of hir thorc̄t , delay
 It wil not be, hir labouſ Is for noct , 1272 Her cousin la
 Now leſ we hir In to hir neweft pan,
 And to arthur we wil retwrn again
 bours to expel
 her love for I an
 celot from her
 thoughts but her
 labour is in vain

[BOOK II]

Night	T he clowdy nyght, wndri whois obscure The rest and quiet of euery cintur	1276
	Lyith fauf, quhare the goft wth bcsynef Is occuput, wth thoghtfull hewynes ,	
	And, for that thocbt furth scheineng vil his mycht,	
	Go fare wel rest and quiet of the nycht	1280
Arthur cannot rest	Aitur, I meyne, to whome that iesft is nocth, But al the nycht supprisit is wth thocbt ,	
	In to his bed he tunynt to and fro,	
	Remembryng the apperans of his wo,	1284
	That is to say, his deith, his confusioune,	
	And of his realme the opin distruccioune	
	That in his wit he can no thing provide,	
	Bot tak his forton thar for to abyd	1288
The sun goeth up	Vp goith the son, vp goith the hot morow , The thoughtfu king al the nycht to forow,	
[Fol 17]	That fauch the day, vpone his feit he start,	
Arthur goeth forth	And furth he goith, distriblit in his hart	1292
He hears that a clerk has arrived,	A quhill he walkith in his pensyf goft,	
between whom and himself there was a hearty affection.	So was he ware thar cummyne to the oft O clerk, with whome he was aqwynt befor,	
	In to his tyme non better was y-bore ,	1296
	Of qwhois com he gretly vas Reisfit,	
	For in to hym sum comfort he supposit ,	
	Betuex them was one hartyt affeccioune	
	Non orderis had he of Relegioun,	1300
	Famus he was, and of gret excellencie,	
He was expert in the seven sciences	And ryght expert in al the vij science ,	
and was named Amytans	Contemplatif and chraft in gouernance,	
	And clepit was the maist ^r amytans	1304

- The king befor his palȝoune one the gren,
 That knew hym well, *and* haith his cummyn feñ,
 Velcummyn hym, and maid hym rycht gud chere, Arthur welcomes
 And he agan, agrewit as he were, him 1308
- Saith, "nothir of thi falofing, nor the,
 Ne rak I nocht, ne charg I nocht," quod hee He recks nothing
 Than quod the king, "maister, *and* for what why of Arthur's salu-
 Ar ȝe agrewit? or quhat treffpas have I tation 1312
- Commyt, so that I fhal yow disples?" The king inquires
 Quod he, "no thing It is ayane myn eȝi,
 But only contrare of thi-self alway, what trespass he
 So fare the courf yow paffith of the way has committed 1316
- Thi schip, that goth apone the stormaly vall,
 Ney of thi careldis in the fwelf it fall,
 Whar she almoft is in the perell drent,
 That is to say, yow art fo far myfwent 1320
- Of wykitnes vpone the vrechit dans,
 That yow art fallyng in the storng¹ vengans
 Of goddis wretch, that fhal the son deuour,
 For of his strok approchit now the hour That is God's
 1324 wrath shall soon
 That boith thi Ringe, thi ceptre, *and* thi crovñ,
 Frome hie eftat he fmyting fhal adouune
 And that accordith well, for in thi thoccht
 Yow knawith not hym, the wich that haith the wrocht, Because thou
 And fet the vp in to this hie eftat knowest Him
 From powert, for, as the felwyne wat, not who set thee
 It cummyth al bot only of his myght,
 And not of the, nor of thi elderis Richt up in this high
 To the descending, as in heritage,
 For yow was not byget in to spouifag estate 1332
- Wharfor yow aucht his biding to obserf,
 And at thy mycht yow shuld hym pleȝ *and* serf, though not begot-
 That dois yow nat, for yow art fo confusfit ten in spousage
 With this fals warld, that thou haith hym Refusit, [Fol. 17 v.] 1336

¹ So in MS Is it necessary to alter it 'o "strong"?

- 1340
- And brakyngh haith his reul and ordynans,
The wiche to the he givē in gouē nans
He maid the king, he mad the gouē noui,
He maid the fo, and fet in hic honou
Of Realmys and of [diuerſ] peplis fure,
Efter his loue thou shuld them Reul *and* ftere, 1344
And wnopprefſit kep in to Iufſice,
The wykit men and pwynce for ther wice
Yow dois no thing, bot al in the *contire*,
And fuffrith al thi puple to foifare , 1348
Yow haith non Ey but one thy ne awn delvt,
Or quhat that pleſing ſhall thyne uppetyt
In the defalt of law and of Iufſice,
Wndir thi hond is sufferyt gct ſuppriſ
Of fauleſ, and moduleſ uſo,
And wedwſ ek fuſtenit mckill wo
With gret myſchef opprefſit u the pure , 1352
And thow art cauſ of al thiſ hol Iniurie,
Whar of that god a raknyng fal craf
At the, and a fore Raknyng fal hafe ,
For thyne eſtat is gewyne to Redicſ
Thar ned, and kep them to rychtwyneſ , 1360
And thar is non that ther complaſtis heris ,
The myc̄thy folk, and ek the flattereris
Ar cheif with the, and doith thiſ opprefſioun ,
If thaſ compleſ, It is ther confuſſioun 1364
And daniell faith that who doith to the pure,
Or faderleſ, or moduleſ, EnIure,
Or to the puple, that ilke to god doth hee ,
And al thiſ harme fuſtenit Is throw the
Yowufferiſ them, opprefſiſt *and* moyiſt ,
So yow art cauſ, throw the thei ar diſtroyth ,
Than, at thi myc̄thy, god fo diſtroyſ yow
What fhal he do aȝane? quhat ſhal yow , 1368
When he diſtroyſ by vengeance of his fueid
The fynars fra the vysagis of the Erde ?
1372
- He made thee
ki g*
- and thou suffer
est thy people to
fue ill*
- The poor are op
pressed*
- If they complain
is their conſu
tion*
- What wilt thou
do when God
destroys theiſ ſummers
off the viſage of
the earth*

- Than vtraly yow shall distroyt bee,
And that Richt weill apperis now of thee, 1376
For yow allon byleft art solitere,
And the wyf salamon can duclar,
‘Wo be to hym that is byleft alone,
He haith no help,’ so Is thi fortone goñ, 1380
For he is callit, with quhom that god is nocht,
Allone, and fo thi wykitnes haith wrocht
That god hymself he is bycummyn thi fo,
Thi pupleis hartis haith thou tynt alfo, 1384
Thi wykitnes thus haith the maid alon,
That of this erth thi fortone Is y goñ
Yow mone thi lyf, yow mone thi vorchip tyne,
And eft to deth that neuere shal haf fyne” 1388
“**M**aister,” quod he, “of yowre beneuolens
The wald wicheſaiſ your confell to me If
How I fal mend, and ek her eftir leif” 1392
“Now,” quod the maifter, “and I have merwell qwhy
Yow askith confail, and wl in non affy,
Nor wyrk thar by, and þht yow may In tym,
If yow lykith to amend the cryme” 1396
“**H**is,” faſh the king, “and futhfaſtly I will
þour ordynans in every thing fulſyll” 1400
“And if the lift at confail to abide,
The remed of thi harme to prouyde—
First, the begynning is of sapiens,
To dreid the lord and his magnificens,
And what thou haith in contrar hyme offendit,
Whill yow haith mycht, of fre desir amend it,¹ 1404
Repent thi guilt, repent thi gret trefpaſ, 1408
And remembir one goddis richwysnes,
How for to hym that wykitnes anoyt,
And how the way of fynaris he diſtroyt,
- Solomon saith
‘Wo to him who
is left alone! He
hath no help’
[Fol 18]
- Thou hast lost thy
people’s hearts
- and shalt come
to death that hath
no end
- Arthur asks how
he shall amend,
- and promises to
fulfil his bidding
- The master re
plies ‘Thou
must first diead
the Lord’
- Repent thy guilt

¹ MS “amendit”

- And if ye lyk to ryng wnder his peſe,
Ye wengans of his myghty hond yow ſelv,
This ſchalt yow do, if yow wil be perfit
First, mone yow be penitent and contrit 1412
Of euery thing that tuechith thi confiēns,
Done of fre will, or þhit of neglygēns
Thi neid requirith ful contretioune,
Princepaly with-out concluſiōne, 1416
With humble hart and goſtly byfynceſ,
Syne ſhalt yow go deuotly the confeſſ
Ther of vnto ſum haly confeſſiōur,
That the wil conſaiſ tueching thin ariou, 1420
And to fulfill his will and ordynans,
In iatiſſaccione and doing of penans,
And to amend al wiang and al Iniuie,
By the ydone til euery Creature, 1424
If yow can In to thi hait fynde,
Contretioune well degeſit In to thi mynd
Now go thi weie, for if it leſful were,
Confeſſiōune to me, I ſhuld It here" 1428
Than arthur, Richt obedient and mek,
In to his wit memoiatyve can feik
Of euery gilt wiſh that he can pens,
Done frome he paſſith the zers of Innocens, 1432
And as his maifter hym commandit had,
He goith and his confeſſiōne haith he maad
Richt deuotly with lamentable cherē,
The maner wiſh quho lykith for to heie
He may It fynd In to the holl romans, 1436
Of confeſſiōne o paſing eercumſtans
I can It not, I am no confeſſiōur,
My wyt haith ewill conſat of that labou, 1440
Quharof I wot I aucht repent me fore
The king wiſh was confeſſit, what is more,
Goith and til his maifter tellith hee,
How euery fyne In to his awn degree 1444
- Thy need re-
quireth full con-
fession*
- Confess to some
holy confessor*
- Do penance and
amend all
wrong*
- [Fol 18 b]
- Arthur tries to
remember every
sin done since his
years of innocence*
- and made his con-
fession with la-
mentable cheer*

- He shew, that mycht occuryng to his mynde
 "Now," quod the maistere, "left thou agh behynde
 Of albenak the vorschipful king ban,
 The wiche that vas in to my seruice flan,
 And of his wif dipherift eft alfo?
 Bot of ther sone, the wiche was them fro,
 Ne spek¹ y not,"—the king in his entent
 Abafyt was, and furthwith is he went 1448
 "Leftest thou
 aught behind
 quoth the master
 about Ban king
 of Albanak and
 his disinherited
 wife?"
- Azane, and to his confessour declarith,
 Syne to his maister he ayane Reparith,
 To quhome he saith, "I aftur my cunyng
 Your ordinans fulfillit in al thing, 1452
 And now right hartly y besreich and prey,
 3he wald withscharf sum thing to me say,
 That may me comfort in my gret dread,
 And how my men ar falȝet in my Neid, 1456
 And of my dreme, the wiche that is fo dirk"
 This maifter faith, "and thow art bound to virk
² A T my confail, and if yow has maad
 A Thi confessione, as yow before hath said, 1460
 And in thi conciens thinkith perfeuere,
 As I perfume that thow onon shalt here
 That god hymself shal fo for y^e prouide,
 Thow shal Remayne and In thi Ring abyd 1464
 And why thi men ar falȝet At this nede,
 At short this is the cauȝt, shalt yow nocht dred,
 Fore thow to gode was frawart and perwvert,
 Thi ryngne and the he thocht for to subwart, 1468
 And yow fal knew na power may recift,
 In contrar quhat god lykith to aff[ſ]t
 The vertw more the strentch of victory
 It cummyth not of man, bot anerly 1472
 Strength of vic
 tory cometh from
 God only

¹ MS apparently has "srpek," but a comparison with line 1543 shews that the apparent *r* is due to the meeting of two slight flourishes belonging to the *s* and *p*

² This line (though it should not) begins with an illuminated letter

- | | | |
|---|--|------|
| | Of hym, the wch haith euey stiinth , and than,
If that the waus plesfit hyme of man,
He shal have forȝ azane his ennemys
A-ryght agan apone the famyne vjȝ, | 1480 |
| whose disp'eses
Him shall be sub
ject to his ene
mies as we leid
in the Bible con
cerning the Jews | If he disflesȝ vn to the lord, he shall
Be to his fais a subiet or a thiall,
As that we may In to the bible red,
Iueching the folk he tuk hyme self to led | 1484 |
| | In to the lond, the wch he them byhicht
Ay when ther ȝhed in to his ways Richt,
Ther fois gon befor there fuedi to nocth ,
And when that ther ayanis hyme hath vrocht, | 1488 |
| When they
wrought ignost
Him They were
so full of fear that
the sound of a
falling l. if made
a thousand fice | They war so full of radur and diffpare,
That of o leif fleing in the air,
The found of It haith gart o thousand tak
At onys apone them self the bak, | 1492 |
| | And al ther manhed vterly forhet ,
Sich dreid the lord apone ther haitis set
So shalt yow know no powar may wthftond ,
Ther god hyme self hath ton the cauȝ on hond | 1496 |
| Thine own of
fence is the rea
son why thy
people ful thee | And ye quhy stant in thyne awn offens ,
That al thi puple falȝhet off defens
And sum ai falȝeing magre ther entent ,
Thei ar to quhom thou yewyne hath thi rent , | 1500 |
| | Thi gret Reuard, thi richeȝ and thi gold ,
And cherifith and held in thi houfhold
Bot the most part ar falȝheit the at wyll ,
To quhome yow haith wnykndnesȝ schawin till , | 1504 |
| T'ou hast shewn
some of them un
kindness | Wrong and mIure, and ek defalt of law ,
And pwnysing of qwhich that ther stand aw ,
And makith seruice but reward or fee ,
Syne haith no thonk bot frenmytneȝ of the | 1508 |
| | Such folk to the cummyth bot for dred ,
Not of fre hart the for to help at nede
And what awalith owthir sheld or fper ,
Or horȝ or armoure according for ye were , | 1512 |

- | | |
|---|--|
| Vith outer man them for to sterte and led ? | [Fol 19 b] |
| And man, yow wot, that vantith hart is ded,
That in to armys feruith he of noght , | and a man that
wanteth heart is
dead |
| A coward oft ful mekil harm haith vroght | 1516 |
| In multitude nore <i>ȝhit</i> in confluens | |
| Of fisch, is nowther manhed nore defens | |
| And so thow hath the rewlyt, that almost | |
| Of al thi puple the harts ben ylost , | 1520 |
| And tynt nicht throw thyne awn mygoue, nans | Thou hast so con-
ducted thyself as
to lose all thy
people's hearts |
| Of auerice and of thyne errogans | |
| What is o prince ? quhat is o gouernoure | |
| Withouten fame of worship and honour ? | 1524 |
| What is his mycht, suppos he be A lorde, | What is a prince
without honour ? |
| If that his folk fal nocht to hym accorde ? | |
| May he his Rigne, may he his holl Empire | |
| Susten al only of his owne defyre, | 1528 |
| In ferwyng of his wrechit appetit | Can he by him
self sustain his
kingdom by
serving his own
appetite ? |
| Of awerice and of his awn delyt, | |
| And hald his men, wncherift, in thraldome ? | |
| Nay ! that fhal sone his hie estat confome | 1532 |
| For many o knycht ¹ therby is broght ydoune, | His oppression of
his people con-
sumes his high
estate and makes
other kings war
on them |
| All vtraly to ther confusioune , | |
| For oft it makith vther king ^s by | |
| To wer on them In tract of victory , | 1536 |
| And oft als throw his peple is distroyth, | |
| That fyndith them agrewit or anoyth , | |
| And god also oft with his awn fwerd, | |
| Punyfith ther wyfis one this erd | 1540 |
| Thus falith not o king but gouernans, | God also punishes
their vices |
| Boith realme and he goith one to myschans " | |
| A S thai war thus speking of this thinge, | Meanwhile the
king of a hundred
knights from the
first conquest
king come from
Galiot, |
| Frome galiot cam two knychtis to the king , | 1544 |
| That one the king of hundereth knychtis was , | |
| That other to nome the fyrist conqueft king ² has, | |

1 "king" (?)

² MS "kinghe," a spelling due to confusion with "knight"

Sec 1 1533

- At first that galoyot conquerit of one
 The neeft way one to the king ther gon, 1548
 And vp he roß as he th̄t wel couth do
 Honor, to quhome that It afferith to ,
 And þhit he wist not at ther kingis weie,
 So them¹ ther boith and vþr ryght knyghtly chei 1552
 Reuerendly ther flust hymē, and thane
 The king of hunder knyghtis he began
 And said hymē, “fir, to ȝow my lord ws fende,
 GaiLOT, whilk bad ws say he wende, 1556
 That of this woild the vorthiefst king wor þhe,
 Greteſt of men and of awtoritee
 Whan of he has gret wonder that þhe ar
 So feble cummyne In to his contrare, 1560
 For to defend your cuntie and your londe,
 And knowith well þhe may hymē nocht withiftonde
 Wharfor he thinkith no worship to conquerie,
 Nore in the weſts more to perſyuere , 1564
 Confiddir yowr waknes and yowr Indegens,
 Aȝans hymē as now to mak defens
 Wharfore, my lord haith grantit by ws here
 Trewis to yhow and refput for o þhere, 1568
 If that yhow lykith by the þheris ſpace
 For to ietwrn ayane In to this place,
 Her to manteine yhour cuntre and withiftond
 Hyme with the holl power of yhour lond 1572
 And for the tyme the trewis ſhal endure,
 Yhour cuntre and yhour lond he will affurre ,
 And wit þhit his powai is nocht here
 And als he bad ws say yhow by the yhere, 1576
 The gud knyght wiſh that the Red armys bure
 And in the feild maid the diſcumfiture,
 The whilk the flour of knyghted may be cold,
 He thinkith hymē to haue of his houſhold ” 1580

and the former
delivers his mes-
sage to the effect
that

[fol 20]

GaiLOT wonders at
the feebleness of
Arthur's folk,

and is willing to
grant a year's
truce

if Arthur will
return to fight
aginſt him in a
year's time

and desires to
have the red
knight in his
household

¹ “then” (?)

"Well," quod the king, "I have hard quhat yhe fay,
But if god will, and ek if that I may,
In to sich wylf I think for to withftond,
Yhour lord shall have no powar of my londe" 1584

Of this mesag the king Reiofing haſ,
And of the trewis wich that grantit was,
Bot anoyt ȝhit of the knyght was he,
Wich thei awant to have in fuch dogre 1588

Arthur rejoices
at the truce

Ther leif thei tuk, and when at thei war gon,

¹ **T**his maifter faith, "how lykith god dispone!"
Now may yhow fe and futh is my recorde,
For by hym now is makith this accord, 1592

which the master
attributes to
God's provi-
dence and ex-
horts him, say-
ing

And by non vthir worldly p'ovidens,
Sauf only grant of his bynewolans,
To fe if that the lykith to amend,
And to proud thi cuntry to defend 1596

Wharfor yow shalt in to thi lond home fair,
And gowerne the as that I shall declare

Firſt, thi god with humble hart yow ferfe,
And his comand at al thi mycht obſerf,
And fyne, lat paſt the ilk bleſſit wonde

[Fol 20v]
'First serve God
with humble
heart and let the
wand of law pass
through the land.'

Of lowe with mercy Iuſtly throw thi londe,
And y beſeich—to quhome yow fal direke
The rewle vpone, the wrangis to correk— 1604

That yow be nocht in thi electricoun blynde,
For wrtitn It Is and yow fal trew It fynde
That, be thei for to thonk or ellis blame,
And toward god thi part ſhal be the faſt, 1608

Of Ignorans ſhalt yow nocht be excusit,
Bot in ther werkis forly be accuſit,
For thou ſhuld euer cheſt apone fiche wylf

The minſteris² that rewll haſth of Iuſtice —
First, that he be defcret til wnderſtond
And lowe and ek the mateſt of the londe,

1612 Thus ſhalt thou
choose the minis-
ters of justice

¹ The initial T is illuminated

² MS "mifteris"

- And be of mycht and ek Automitee,
(For puple ay contempnith low degré,) 1616
And that of trouth he folow furth the way ,
That is als mych as he louyth trewth alway,
And haitith al them the wch fal pas therfio
Syne, that he god dreid and lowe al so 1620
-
- Avoid avaricious
and wrathful
men
- Of auerice be-war with the defyie,
And of hymē full of haftynes *and fye* ,
Be war thar for of malice and desire,
And hymē also that lowith no medyre , 1624
For al this abhomirable was hold,
When Iuſtice was in to the tymis olde
For qwho that is of an of thur by-know,
The left of them subuertith all the low, 1628
And makith It w[n]Iustly¹ to p'ocede ,
Eschew tharfor, for this fal be thi meid
Apone the day when al thing goith aright,
Whar none excus hidyng felil ye lyght, 1632
But he the Iug, that no man may fuffpek,
Euery thing ful Iuſtly fal correk
Be-war thar-wirth, as before have I told,
And cheſ them wyfly that thi low fhal hold 1636
And als I will that it well oft be sen,
Richt to thi self how thei thi low conten ,
And how the Right, and how the dom is went,
For to Inquer that yow be delygent 1640
- [Fol 21]
- Be diligent to in
quire how judg
ment is given
- Visit every chief
town throughout
the bounds of thy
kingdom
- And punyſ for, for o thing fhal yow know,
The most trefpas is to subuert the low,
So that yow be not in thar gilt accusit,
And frome the front of blifit folk refusit 1644
And pas yow fhalt to euery chef tourne,
Throw out the boundis of thi Regioune
Whar yow fall be, that Iuſtice be Elyk
With-out drifione baith to pur *and ryk* 1648

¹ MS "w Iustly "

And that thi puple have [ane] awdiens
 With thar complaⁿts, and alfo thi presens,
 For qwho his eris frome the puple stekith,
 And not his hond in ther supprt furth rekith, 1652

His dom fall be ful grewous & ful hard,
 When he fal cry and he fal nocht be hard

Wharfor thyne eris ifith to the pwre, Give thine ears to
 Bot in redref^s of ned, & not of inIure, 1656 the poor

Thus fall ther don of Resfone & knawlag

But king^s when ther ben of tender ag,
 Y wl not fay I draft ther ben excusit,

Bot schortly ther fall be fax accusit, 1660

When fo ther cum to yheris of Resfone,

If ther tak not full contrisoun,

And pwny^s them that hath ther low myfgyit

That this is trouth it may not be denyit,

For vther ways ther fal them not discharg,

[Excep ther pwny^s them that have the charg]¹

One eftatys of ther realm, that shold

W^th in his ȝouth se that his low be hold ²

And thus thow the, w^th mercy, kep alway

Of Iustice furth the ilk bleffit w^yay

And of thi wordis beis trew and stable,
 Spek not to mych, more be not vareable 1672

O king^s word shuld be o king^s bonde,

And faid It is, a king^s word shuld stond ,

O king^s word, among our faderis old,

Al out more precious & moie fur was hold

Than was the eth or feel of any wight ,

O king of trouth fuld be the werray lyght,

So treuth and Iustice to o king accordyth

And als, as thr clerk^s old recordith,

1668

Temper justice
with mercv

Be true and stable
in thy words

1676

A king should be
the very light of
truth.

1680

³ **I**n tyme is larges and humilitee
 Right well according vnto hie dugre,

¹ A blank space here occurs, just sufficient to contain one line

² MS "behold "

³ The initial I is illuminated, rather because there is here a change of subject than because it begins a new sentence

- [Fol 21b]
- And pleffith boith to god and man al so ,
Wharfor I wil, *incontinent* thow go, 1684
And of thi lond in euery part abide,
Whar yow gar fet and clep one euer y fid
Out of the cuntieis, and ek out of thi tovnis,
Thi duk^s, erlis, and thi gret baironis, 1688
Thi pur knyghts^s, and thi bach[e]leris,
And them refauf als haitly as afferis,
And be them-self yow welcum them ilkon
Syne, them to glaid and cheris, thee dispone 1692
With festing and with humyll *contynans*
Be not penfyve, nore proud in arrogans,
Bot with them hold in gladnes cumpany ,
Not with the Rich nor myghty ane^{ly}, 1696
Bot with the pure wirthi man also,
With them thow fit, with them yow ryd and go
I say not to be oui fameliar,
For, as the moft philofephur can duclar, 1700
To my ch to oy^B familiaritee
Contempnyng bryngith one to hie dugre ,
Bot cherice them with wordis fan depaynt,
So with thi pupelle fal yow the aquaynt 1704
Than of ilk cuntie wyfly yow enquire
An agit knyght to be thi consulere,
That harth beh hold in armys Richt famus,
Wy^B and discret, & no thing Inwyus , 1708
For there is non that knowith fo wel, I-wy^B
O worthy man as he that worthi Is
When thou hast
sojourned long in
a place then pro-
vide thes with
plenty of horses
armour gold sil-
ver and cloth-
ing
and, before leav-
ing distribute
gifts liberally
- Choose out of
each district an
aged knight to be
thy counsellor
- When thou hast
sojourned long in
a place then pro-
vide thes with
plenty of horses
armour gold sil-
ver and cloth-
ing
- Keep company
not with the rich
man only but
with the poor
worthy man also
- Yet rememb're
that familiarity
breeds contempt
- And pleffith boith to god and man al so ,
Wharfor I wil, *incontinent* thow go, 1684
And of thi lond in euery part abide,
Whar yow gar fet and clep one euer y fid
Out of the cuntieis, and ek out of thi tovnis,
Thi duk^s, erlis, and thi gret baironis, 1688
Thi pur knyghts^s, and thi bach[e]leris,
And them refauf als haitly as afferis,
And be them-self yow welcum them ilkon
Syne, them to glaid and cheris, thee dispone 1692
With festing and with humyll *contynans*
Be not penfyve, nore proud in arrogans,
Bot with them hold in gladnes cumpany ,
Not with the Rich nor myghty ane^{ly}, 1696
Bot with the pure wirthi man also,
With them thow fit, with them yow ryd and go
I say not to be oui fameliar,
For, as the moft philofephur can duclar, 1700
To my ch to oy^B familiaritee
Contempnyng bryngith one to hie dugre ,
Bot cherice them with wordis fan depaynt,
So with thi pupelle fal yow the aquaynt 1704
Than of ilk cuntie wyfly yow enquire
An agit knyght to be thi consulere,
That harth beh hold in armys Richt famus,
Wy^B and discret, & no thing Inwyus , 1708
For there is non that knowith fo wel, I-wy^B
O worthy man as he that worthi Is
When well long haith yow fwiornyt in a place,
And well acqueynt the vith thi purple has, 1712
Than shalt thou ordand & prowid the
Of hor^B and ek of armour gret plente ,
Of gold, and filuer, tressore, and cleithing,
And euery Riches that longish to o king , 1716
And when the lykith for to tak thi leif,
By large^B thus yow thi reward geif,

- First to the pure worthy honorable,
That is til armys and til manhed able , 1720
(Set he be pur, þhit worship in hymē bidith),
If hymē the horf one wicħ thi felwyne Ridith,
And bid hymē that he Rid hymē for yhour fak ,
Syne til hymē gold and filuer yow betak , 1724
The horf to hymē for worship and prowes,
The tiefor for his fredome and laiges
If moft of Riches and of Cherrifg ,
Eftur this gud knyght berith vtneſing 1728
Syne to thi tennandis & to thi wawaſouris
If effy haknays, palfrays, and curfours,
And robis fitch as plefand ben and fair ,
Syne to thi lordis, wicħ at myghty aire , 1732
As dukis, erlis, princis, and ek kingis,
Yow if them strang, yow if them vncouth thingis ,
As diueris iowellis, and ek preciouſ ſtonis,
Oi halkis, hundis, ordinit for the nonis , 1736
Or wantone horf that can nocht stand in ftāble ,
Thar giftis mot be fair and delitable
Thus, firſt vn to the vorthi pur yow if
Giftis, that may ther pouerte Releif , 1740
And to the rich iſtis of pleſans ,
That thei be fair, fet nocht of gret ſubſtans ,
For riches afkith no thing bot delyt,
And powert haith ay aine appetyt 1744
For to ſupport ther ned and Indigens
Thus shall yow if and makith thi diſpens
And ek the quen, my lady, fhalt alfo
To madenis and to ladeis, quhai þe go , 1748
If, and cheris one the famyne wyf ,
For in to largeſ al thi welfar lys
And if thy giftis with fitch continans
That thei be fen ay gifyne with pleſans , 1752
The wyf man fais, and futh it is apprount,
Thar is no thonk, thar is no iſt alowit,
- Give to the poor
worthy man the
horse thou thy
ſelf rideſt
- [Fol 22a]
- Give to thy ten
ants and wava
ſours easy hack
neys palfries and
coursers
- Give to thy lords
things ſtrange
and uncouth
- So too ſhall the
queen give to
maidenſ and la
dieſ,
- for all thy welfare
lies in liberality

- Bot It be ifyne In to fiche maneie,
 (That is to say, als glaid in to his chere), 1756
 As he the wiche the ift of hyme Refauith ,
 And do he not, the gifar is diffauith
 For who that iffis, as he not if wald,
 Mor profit war his ift for to with hald , 1760
 His thonk he tynith, and his ift also
 Bot that thow iifth, if with boith two,
 That is to say, with hant and hand atonis ,
 And so to the wyfman ay ye ift disponis 1764
 Beith larg and iffis fiely of thi thing ,
 For largeſ is the tiefour of o king,
 And not this other Iowellis nor this gold
 That is in to thi trefory with holde 1768
 Who gladly iifth, be vertew of larges
 His trefory enciesis of Richeſſ,
 And fal aȝaȝe the mor al out icfawe
 For he to quhome he ȝewith fall hawe,
 First his body, fyne his hart with two , 1772
 His gudis al for to dispone also
 In his feruice , and mor atour he shall
 Have O thing, and that is best of all , 1776
 That is to say, the worship and the loſſ
 That vpone larges in this world furth goſſ
 And yow shal knew the lawbour & the pref
 In to this erth about the gret Richeſſ 1780
 Is ther aſ any la
 bour except for
 meat and cloth
 ing? All the
 remnant is for
 fume
- Give with both
 hand and heart
 at once
- for liberality is
 the treasure of a
 king
- (Fol 22 & 1)
- Whoso gives lib
 erally his trea
 sury increases
- For the receiver
 shall place his
 goods at the
 King's disposal
- who shall gain
 moreover both
 worship and
 praise
- Is ther aſ any la
 bour except for
 meat and cloth
 ing? All the
 remnant is for
 fume
- Bot It be ifyne In to fiche maneie,
 (That is to say, als glaid in to his chere), 1756
 As he the wiche the ift of hyme Refauith ,
 And do he not, the gifar is diffauith
 For who that iffis, as he not if wald,
 Mor profit war his ift for to with hald , 1760
 His thonk he tynith, and his ift also
 Bot that thow iifth, if with boith two,
 That is to say, with hant and hand atonis ,
 And so to the wyfman ay ye ift disponis 1764
 Beith larg and iffis fiely of thi thing ,
 For largeſ is the tiefour of o king,
 And not this other Iowellis nor this gold
 That is in to thi trefory with holde 1768
 Who gladly iifth, be vertew of larges
 His trefory enciesis of Richeſſ,
 And fal aȝaȝe the mor al out icfawe
 For he to quhome he ȝewith fall hawe,
 First his body, fyne his hart with two , 1772
 His gudis al for to dispone also
 In his feruice , and mor atour he shall
 Have O thing, and that is best of all , 1776
 That is to say, the worship and the loſſ
 That vpone larges in this world furth goſſ
 And yow shal knew the lawbour & the pref
 In to this erth about the gret Richeſſ 1780
 Is ony, bot¹ apone the cauſ we see
 Of met, of cloth, & of prosperitee?
 All the remanant stant apone the name
 Of purches, furth apone this world's fame 1784
 And well yow wot, in thyne allegians
 Ful many Is, the wiche haith sufficians
 Of euery thing that longhith to ther ned , 1787
 What haith yow more, qwich [haith] them al to lede,

¹ MS "Is ony bout bot," "bout" being defaced

- For al thi Realmys and thi gret Riches,
 If that yow lak of worship the encreſ? 1792
 Well leſ, al-out, for after thar eſtate
 Thei have vorſhip, and kepiſt It al gat,
 And yow degradith al thyne hie dugree,
 That fo ſchuld fhyne In to nobeltee,
 Throughe wys and throw the wrechitneſ of hart
 And knowis yow not what fall be¹ thi part,
 Out of thi world when yow fal paſt the courſ? 1796
 Fair well, I-wyf²! yow neuer ſhall Recourſ
 Whar no prince more ſhall the ſubiet² have,
 But be als dep in to the erd y grave, 1800
 Sauf vertew only and worſhip wiſh abidith,
 With them the world apone the laif dewidith,
 And if he, wiſh ſhal eftir the fuſſed,
 By larges ſpend, of quhich that yhow had dread, 1804
 He of the world comendit is and prifit,
 And yow ſtant furth of euery thiſg diſpifit,
 The puple faſth and demyth thus of thee,
 "Now is he gone, a werray vrech was hee,
 And he the wiſh that is our king and lord
 Boith vertew haſth & larges in accorde,
 Welcum be he!" and fo the puple foundith
 Thus through thi viſ his vertew mor aboundith, 1812 [Fol. 23 a]
 And hiſ vertew the more thi vice furth ſchawith
 Wharfor ȝhe, wiſh that princes ben y knawith,
 Lat not yhour wrechit hart ſo yhow dant,
 That he that cummyth next yhow may awant 1816
 To be mor larg, nore more to be comendit,
 Beſt keptiſ Is the Riches well diſpifit
 O ȝhe, the wiſh that kiŋſ ben, fore ſham
 Remembriſt yhow, thiſ world hath bot o naam 1820
 Of good or ewill, after ȝhe ar gone!
 And wyſly tharfor cheſſith yhow the toñ
- Knowest thou
not what ſhall be
thy part when
thou paſteſt
away from thiſ
world?
- Virtue and hor-
our will alone re-
mainn
- And iſ thi ſuc-
cessor be libeſial
he wiſh be com-
mended of thiſ
world

¹ MS has "by"² MS has "ſubiet"and hiſ virtue will
abound through
thy viceRiches well ſpent
are the beſt kept

	Wich moft accordith to nobilitie, And knytith larges to yhour hie degré For qwhar that fredome In O p'ince Ringnis, It bryngith In the victory of kingis, And makith realmys and puple boith to dout, And subects ¹ of the cuntie al about	1824
Whoso will be a conqueror let him not reck to give largely	And qwho that thinkith ben o conquerour, Suppos his largeſ fumquhat pas myfour, Ne rak he nat, bot frely iffith ay, And as he wynyth, beis vir al way To mych nor ȝhit to gedy that he hold, Wich fal the hartis of the puple colde And low and radour cummyth boith two Of larges , Reid and ȝhe fal fynd It fo	1828
Both love and fear spring from liberality	Alexander this lord the waild that wan, First with the fued of larges he began, And as he wynith iffith largely, He rakith No thing bot of chuehly , Wharfor of hyme fo paſſith the Renown,	1832
Alexander gave so liberally,	That many o cetee, and many o strang towñ Of his worship that herith the Recorde, Diffirith fo to haveing fiche o lorde , And offerith them with outen strok of spere,	1836
that many cities desired to have such a lord,	Suppos that theri war manly men of were, But only for his gentilles that theri Have hard , and fo he louit was al-way For his larges, humilitie, and manhed,	1840
and offered them selves peaceably to him, though they were manly men of war	With his awn folk, that neuer more, we Reid, For al his weris nor his gret trawell, In al his tym that theri hyme onys faul , Bot in his worship al thar besynes	1844
[Fol 235]	Thei fet, and lewirth in to no dufres , Whar throw the fuerd of victory he berith And many prince full oft the palm werith,	1848
Many princes bear the palm of		1852
		1856

¹ Or "subettas"

- As has ben hard, by largeſ, of before,
In conqueringe of Rignis & of glore
And wrechitnes Richt fo, in the contrar,
Haith Realmys maid ful defolat & bare,
And king^s broght down from ful hue estat ,
And who that Red ther old buk^s, wat
The viciſ leſ, the wertew have in mynde,
And takith larges In his awn kynd ,
A myd ſtanding of the viciſ two,
Prodegalitee and awerice alſo
Wharfor her-of It nedith not to more,
So mych ther-of haith clerks vrit to-fore
Bot who the wertw of larges & the law
Sal cheſ, mot ned confidir well & knaw
In to hymſelf, and thur thre wnderſtande,
The fubſtans firſt, the powar of his land,
Whome to he iſſith, and the cauſ whareſore,
The nedful tyme awatith euermore
Kepith thur thre, for qwho that fal exced
His rent, he fallith fodandly in nede
And fo the king, that on to myſter drowis,
His ſubiectis and his puple he our-thrawis,
And them diſpolzeiſt boith of lond and Rent ,
So is the king, fo is the puple ſchent
For-quhi the woſe It ferik[1]th vp ful ewyne
With out abaid, and paſſith to the hewyne,
Whar god hymſelf refauith ther the crye
Of the opprefioune and the teranny,
And with the fuerd of wengans douȝ y fmytith,
The wiſh that caruth al to for, and biſtith,
And hymſe diſtroyth, as has ben hard or thiſ
Of euery king that wirkith fiſh o mys
For ther is few eſchaphit them, It fall
Boith vpone hymſe & his ſucceſſione fall ,
For he forſuth haith iſyne hymſe the wond
To Iuſteſy and Reull in pece his lond,
- victory through
liberality
- 1860 while miserliness
 hath made realms
 desolate
- 1864
- Choose the mean
between prodi-
gality and avar-
ice
- 1868 Whoso chooses to
 be liberal
- 1872 must understand
 three things the
 amount he has to
 whom he giveth
 and the fit time
 for giving
- 1876 (1) The king that
 becomes indigent
 overthrows his
 ſubjects
- 1880 For the voice of
 the oppreſſed
 ſhrieketh up
 ceafeleſſly to
 heaven
- 1884 and God ſmiteth
 down with the
 ſword of ven-
 geance
- 1888
- For God hath
given the king
the wand of jus-
tice
- 1892 [Fol 24a]

- The puple all submytit to his cure ,
And he azan one to no creatur
Save only shull vn to his gode obey
And if he p̄sith fo fu out of the wey, 1896

 and if he oppresses them
whom he should
rule

 God shall stretch
His mighty hand
for correction
- The puple all submytit to his cure ,
And he azan one to no creatur
Save only shull vn to his gode obey
And if he p̄sith fo fu out of the wey, 1896

 Them to oppresſ, that he shuld reul & gd,
Ther heritag, there gwdis to dewide,
Ye, wnder whome that he most nedis stond,
At correcciuone fal ftrek his mychty hond, 1900
Not euery day, bot shal it onys fall
On hyme, mayhap, and his succesione all
In this, allace ! the blyndis of the kingis,
And Is the fall of princis and of Rygnis 1904
The most wertew, the gret Intellegens,
The blefhit tokyne of wyfdom and prudens
Ifſ, in o king, for to refren his honde
Frome his pupleis Riches & ther lond 1908
Mot euery king have this wice in mynd
In tyme, and not when that he ned fynde !
And in thi larges beith war, I pray,
Of nedful tyme, for than is beft alway 1912
(P, Choose a fit
ting time
(?) Tale come to
whom you live

 Awys! the ek quhome to that thou falt if,
Of there fam, and ek how that ther leif ,
And of the wertws and wicious folk alſo,
I the beſeich dewidith well thr two, 1916
So that ther stond noct in[to] o degree ,
Diferēcciuone fall mak the diuerhitee,
Wich clepith the moder of al vertewis
And beith war, I the beſeich of this, 1920
That is to fay of flattery, wich that longith
To court, and al the kingis larges fongith
The vertuouſ man no thing thar of refauith,
The flattereris now fo the king diffauith 1924
And blyndith them that wot no thing, I wyſ,
When ther do well, or quhen ther do o myſ ,
And latith kingis oft til wnderſtonde
That viciſ, and ek ye faltis of ther lond 1928
- Beware of flat-
tery

- In to the realme about o king Is holde
 O flatterere were than is the stormys cold,
 Or peftelens, and mor the realme anoyith ,
 For he the law and puple boith distroyith 1932
 And in to principall ben ther three thingis,
 That cauffith flattereris stonding with the kingis ,
 And on, It is the blyndit Ignorans
 Of kingis, wch that hath no gouernans 1936
 To wnderstond who doith fiche o myf ,
 But who that fareift schewith hym, I wyf ,
 Moft suffifith and beft to his plefans
 Wo to the realme that havith fiche o chans ! 1940
 And fecundly, quhar that o king Is
 Wecus! hymself, he cherrifith, ywys ,
 Al them the wch that one to viciis soundith,
 Whar throw that viciis and flattery ek aboundith 1944
 The thrid, is the ilk schrewit haifful wice,
 Wich makith o king wthin hymself so nyce,
 That al thar flattery and ther glt he knowith
 In to his wit, and ȝhit he hym self drowith 1948
 Them to repref, and of ther viciis he wot ,
 And this It is wch that difsemblyng hot,
 That in no way accordith for o king
 Is he not fet abuf apone his Ringne, 1952
 As souerane his puple for to lede ?
 Whi schuld he spare, or quhom of schuld he died
 To say the treuth, as he of Right is hold ?
 And if so ware that al the kingis wold, 1956
 When that his legis comytat ony wyce,
 As beith not to schamful, nore to nyce,
 That ther perfume that he is negligent,
 But als far as he thinkith that ther myf went ,
 But difsemblyng reprewith as afferis , 1960
 And pwinice them quhar pwnyfing Requeris,
 Sauf only mercy in the tyme of ned
 And fo o king he schuld his puple led, 1964
- A flatterer is
worse than a
storm or a pesti-
lence
- [Fol 24 b]
Three things
make flatterers in
favour
- First the blind
ignorance of
kings
- Secondly where
a king is vicious
himself
- Thirdly where
the king is so
foolish that he
knows their flat-
tery yet with-
draws from re-
proving them
- Why should a
king spare to say
the truth?
- He should re-
prove without
dissembling, as it
is fitting

- That no trefpaſt, that cummyth in his wav,
 Shuld paſt his hond wne pwnift away ,
 Nore no good deid in to the famyn degree,
 Nore no wertew, fuld wn Reuardid bee 1968
- Then flattery,
 that now is high,
 should be low*
- Than flattery shuld, that now is he, be low,
 And wice from the king's court with drow ,
 His ministeris that shuld the Iuſtice reull,
 Shuld kep well furth of quiet & reull, 1972
- That now, god wat, as It conſerwſt Is,
 The ftere is loft, and al is gon amys ,
 And veitew shuld hame to the court hymē drefſ,
 That exillith goith in to the wildernes 1976
- [Fol 25 a]
- If a kung thus
 stood like his own
 degree his people
 would be virtuous
 and wise
- Thus if o king ſtud lyk his awn degree,
 Wertwſ and wyſ than shuld his purple bee,
 Only fet by vertew hymē to pleſ,
 And fore adred his wiſdom to diſpleſ 1980
- And if that he toward the vicis draw,
 His folk fall go on to that ilk law ,
 What fhāl hymē pleſ that wil nocht ellis fynd,
 Bot ther apon fetith al ther mynde 1984
- Thus only in the wertew of o king
 The reull ftant of his purple & his iingne,
 If he be wyſ and, but diſembylyng, ſchewis,
 As I have faid, the vicis one to ſchrewis 1988
- And fo thus, fir, It ftant apone thi will
 For to omend thi purple, or to fpill ,
 Or have thi court of vertewis folk, or fullis ,
 Sen yow art holl maifter of the ſcoullis 1992
- Since thou art
 wholly master of
 the schools teach
 them and they
 shall gladly
 learn*
- Teichith them, and thei fal gladly leir,
 That is to fay, that thei may no thing heir¹,
 Sauf only wertew towairt thyn eftat ,
 And cherm̄ them that wertews ben algairt 1996
- And thinkith what that wertew is to thee ,
 It pleifith god, vphaldith thi degree ”

¹ Or, “leir.” MS apparently has “leir,” corrected to “heir”

- | | | |
|---|------|--|
| "Mawfere," quod he, "me think ryght profitable
Yowr confeell Is, and wonder honorable
For me, and good , ryght well I have <i>confauit</i> ,
And in myne harts Inwartneſ refauit
I fhal fulfill and do yowr ordynans
Als far of wit as I have suffisans ,
Bot y besech yow, in til haitly wyf,
That of my drem þe fo to me dewysf,
The wiche fo long haith occupeid my mynd,
How that I fhal no maner fecour fynd
Bot only throw the wattir lyon, & fyne
The leich that is withouten medysyne ,
And of the confell of the flour , wiche ayre
Wonders lyk that no man can duclar " | 2000 | Arthur considers his counsil pio fitable |
| "I fhal fulful and do yowr ordynans
Als far of wit as I have suffisans ,
Bot y besech yow, in til haitly wyf,
That of my drem þe fo to me dewysf,
The wiche fo long haith occupeid my mynd,
How that I fhal no maner fecour fynd
Bot only throw the wattir lyon, & fyne
The leich that is withouten medysyne ,
And of the confell of the flour , wiche ayre
Wonders lyk that no man can duclar " | 2004 | |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2008 | He beseeches him to expound his drem
how he shall only find help through the water lion, the leech and the flower |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2012 | |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2016 | The master's ex planation
[Fol 20v] |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2020 | The water hon is men's fragility, |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2024 | |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2028 | whereby they see not the lion perfectly |
| "Now, fur," quod he, "and I of them al thre,
What thei betakyne fhal I schaw to the,
Such as the clerkes at them spesifit ,
Thei vfit no thing what thei signefit
The wattir lyone Is the god wernay,
God to the lyone is lyknyt many way ,
But thei have hyme In to the wattir ſen,
Confusit were ther wittis al, y weſi ,
The wattir was ther awn frageltee,
And thar trefpas, and thar Inequitee
In to this world, the wiche thei ftond y-cloſit ,
That was the wattir wiche thei have ſuppoſit,
That haith there knowlag maad fo Imperfyte ,
Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,
As clowdy wattir, was euermore beſtein,
That thei the lyone perfity hath noct ſen ,
Bot as the wattir, wiche was yer awn fyne,
That euermor thei ftond confusit In
If thei haith ftond in to religion clen,
Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhal not remufe | 2032 | Had men been always religious they had seen the hon not in water, but clearly |

- And euer more in vatter, of fyne vas hee
 For quhi It is Imposseble for to bee,¹ 2036
 And thus the world, wich that thei ar In,
 Y clost Is in dyrknes of thei fyne,
 And ek the thiknes² of the au between
 The lyone mad in vattu to be fen 2040
 For It was nocht bot strentch of ther clergy
 Wich thei have here, and It is bot erthly,
 That makith them there icasouns dewyf,
 And fe the lyone thus in erthly wyf 2044
 This is the lyone, god, and goddis sone,
 Ihesu crift, wich ay in hewyne fal wonne
 For as the lyone of euery best is king,
 So is he lord and maister of al thing, 2048
 That of the bleffit vjrgyne vas y-boie
 Ful many a natur the lyone haith, quhar-foie
 That he to god resemblyt is, bot I
 Lyk not mo at this tyme specify 2052
 This is the lyone, thar-of have yow no dred,
 That fhal the help and comfort In thi ned
The fentens here now woll I the defyne
 Of hym, the lech withouten medyfyn, 2056
 Wich is the god that every thing hath viought
 For yow may know that vther Is It noght,
 As furgynis and feficienis, wich that delith
 With mortell thingis, and mortell thingis helyth, 2060
 And al thar art is in to medyfyn,
 As it is ordanit be the mycht dewyne,
 As plafters, drinkis, and anouyntmentis² feir,
 And of the qualyte watyng of the yher , 2064
 And of the planetis dispicioune,
 And of the naturis of compleccyonis,
 And in the diuerf² changing of hwmowris
 Thus wnder reull lynth al there cwrnis , 2068

The world is en
closed in the
darkness of their
sin

The lion is God's
Son Jesu Christ

The leech with
out medicine is
also God

[FOL 26 a] Not as surgeons,

whose art is in
medicine

and in plasters,
drinks and vari-
ous smouments
who know the
quality of the
year and the dis-
position of the
planets

¹ "see" (?)

² MS "anoūytmētis," or "anoūytmētis"

- And yhit thei far as blynd man In the way,
 Oft quhen that deith thar craft lift to affay
 Bot god, the wicth that is the soueran lech,
 Nedith no maner medyfyne to fech , 2072
 For ther is no Infyrmyte, nore wound,
 Bot as hyme lykith al is holl and found
 So can he heill Infyrmytee of thoght,
 Wich that one erdly medefyne can noght , 2076
 And als the faul that to confusione goorth,
 And haith with hyme and vther partis boith,
 His dedly wound god helyth frome the ground ,
 On to his cure no medysyne is found 2080
 This Is his mycht that neuer more shall fyne,
 This is the leich withouten medyfyne ,
 And If that yhow at confessioun hath ben
 And makith the of al thi fynnis clen , 2084
 Yow art than holl, and this ilk famyn is he
 Schall be thi leich In al neceffitee
Now of the flour y woll to the discern
 This is the flour that haith¹ the froyt eterñ, 2088
 This is the flour, this fadith for no schour,
 This is the flour of euery floures floure ,
 This is the flour, of quhom the froyt vas born ,
 This ws redemyt after that we war lorn , 2092
 This Is the flour that euer spryngith new,
 This is the flour that changith neuer hew ,
 This is the vyrgyne, this is the blesfit flour
 That Ihesu bur that is our salweour , 2096
 This flour wnwemmyt of hir wrginuitee ,
 This is the flour of our felicitee ,
 This is the flour to quhom ve shuld exort,
 This is the flour not feffith to support 2100
 In prayere, confell, and in byffynes,
 Vs catifis ay In to our wrechitnes
- But God can heal
infirmity of
thought,

and also the soul
that goeth to con-
fusion
- He shall be thy
leech in all neces-
sity
- The flower is she
of whom the
eternal fruit was
born,
- the virgin that
bore the Saviour,
- that ceaseth not
to support us
catifis
- [Fol. 26 v]

¹ The word, though indistinct, is almost certainly "hunth" Stevenson has "high," but this gives no sense

- 2104
- On to hir sone, the quach hir confell herith,
 This is the flour that al ou gladnes^t itonith,
 Throuch whois praye^r many one is fawit
 That to the deth eternaly war rcfawit,
 Ne wai hir haity fuplicatioune
 This is the flour of our saluatione, 2108
 Next hir sone, the floyt of euyer flour,
 This is the fam that shal be thi succour,
 If that the lykith haity Reueans
 And seruice geld one to hir excellens,
 Syne worship hir with al thi byffyneis^t,
 Sche fal thi harm, sche fall thi ned redies^t
 Sche fall fice confell if one to the two,
 The lyone and the fouverane lech also, 2112
 Yow fall not Ned yⁱ diem for to dispai,
 Nor zhit no thing that is in thi contrare
 Now—quod the maister—yow may woll wnderstand
 Tueching thi drem as I have born on hande, 2120
 And planly haith the mater al declarith,
 That yhow may know of wch yow was disparith
 The lech, the lyone, and the flour also,
 Yow worship them, yow serve them euermo , 2124
 And ples the world as I have fad before,
 In gouernans thus stondith al thi glore
 Do as yow lift, for al is in thi honde,
 To tyne thi-self, thi honore, and thi londe, 2128
 Or lyk o prince, o conquerour, or king,
 In honore and in worship for to Ringe ”
- The king replies “ Now,” quod the king, “ I fell that the support
 Of yhour confell haith don me fiche comfort, 2132
 Of euyer raddour my hart is In to es^t,
 To zhur command, god will, y fal obeis^t
 Bot o thing is yneuch wn to me,
 How galot makith his awant that he 2136
 Shall have the knycht, that only by his honde
 And manled, was defendour of my londe ,
- through whose
prayer are many
saved
- She shall so
counsel the lion
and the leech
that thou need
not despair
- Do now as thou
list, for all is in
thy hand.
- that his heart is
eased from fear,
- but injures if
Galiot will win
over the red
knight and what
is his name

- If that shall fall y pray yhow tellith me,
And quhat he hecht, and of quhat lond is hee?" 2140
- "What that he hecht yow shall no forye¹ know,
His dedis fall her-etterwарт hymе schaw,
Bot contrar the he shall be found no way
No more thar of as now y will the fay"¹ 2144
- With that the king haith at his maistir tone
His leve, one to to his cuntry for to goне,
And al the ost makith none abyde,
To paffing home anone thei can prowid ,
And to *fir* gawane thei haith o lytter maad,
Ful sore ywound, and hymе on with them haade
[T]he king, as that the ftony can declar,
- Pasfith to o Cete that was Right fair,
And clepit cardole, In to walsh, was,
For that tyme than It was the ne^reft place,
And thar he soiornyt xxiiij² days
In ryall festing, as the auttore fays 2156
- So discrely his puple he haith cherit,
That he thar hartis holy haith conquerit
And *fir* gawan, helyt holl and found
Be xv dais he was of euery wounde ,
Right blyth therof in to the court war ther
And so befell, the xxiiij² day,
The king to fall in to o hewynes,
Right ate his table fitting at the mes³ ,
And *fir* gawan cummyth hymе before,
And said hymе, "Iu, yhour thought is al to fore,
Considering the diuerſ⁴ knychtis here
Ar of wncouth and strang landis here" 2168
- The king anfuerit, as in to matalent,
"Sir, of my thocht, or þhit of myne entent,
Yhe have the wrang me to repref, for quhy
Thai lewith none that shuld me blam, for I 2172
- The master
evades reply
- [Fol 27a]
The king and the
host return horse
- 2152 The king sojourns
twenty four d^ys
at Cardole in
Wales
- Sir Gawan is
healed in fifteen
days
- 2164 The king becomes
mournful as he
eats at the mess
- Gawan rebukes
him
- The king answers
in ' matalent

¹ At the bottom of the page is the catch word, "With that the king" ² MS "xxvij," altered to "xxiiij"

- that he was
thinking of the
worthiest knight
living
- Was thinkand one the worthiest that lewyt,
That al the worship In to armys prewyt ,
And how the thonk of my defens he had,
And of the woe that galot hath mad 2176
- But I have sen, when that of my houfhold
ThaI was, and of my falowfship, that wold,
If that ther wist, quhat thing shuld me pleſ,
Thei wald nocht leif for trawell nor for eſ 2180
- And sum tyme It pefwmyt was & fud,
That in my houfhold of al this world I had
The flour of knyghted and of chevalry ,
Bot now thar-of y fe the conturye, 2184
- Sen that the flour of knyghted is away ”
“ Schir,” quod he, “ of Refone futh yhe say ,
And if god will, In al this wauld fo Round
He fal be fught, if that he may be found ” 2188
- [Fol 27 b] Gawan departs to
seek Lancelot
- Than gawan goith with o knyghtly chere,
At the hal'dure he faith In this maner
“ In this pasag who lykith for to wend ?
It is o Iorne moſt for to comend 2192
- That In my tyme In to the court fallith,
To knyghtis wich that chewellry lowith
Or trawell In to armys for to hant ,
And lat no knycht fra thyne furth hymē awant 2196
- All the knights
rise to go with
him
- That it denyith ,”—with that onon ther roſ,
Al the knyghtis, and frome the burdis goſ
The king that fauch In to his hart was wo ,
And faid, “ fir gawan, nece, why dois yow fo ? 2200
- Arthur reproves
him
- Knowis yow nocht I myne houfhold fuld encres ,
In knyghted, and in honore, and largeſ?
And now yow thinkith mak me diffolat
Of knyghtis, and my houſ transfulat, 2204
- Gawan explains
- To fek o knycht, and It was neuer more
Hard fiche o ſemblē makith o before ”
“ Sn,” quod he, “ als few as may yhow pleſ ,
For what I said was no thing for myne eſ, 2208

Nor for desir of falouship, for why
To paſſ alone, but cumpany, think I,
And ilk knycht to paſſ o fundry way,
The mo thei paſſ the fewar elchef thay, 2212

Bot thus shal pas no mo bot as yhow left"
"Takith," quod he, "of quhom ȝhe lykith best,
Fourty in this pafag for to go,"

Arthur assigns him forty companions

At this command and gawan chefit fo 2216
Fourty, quwhich that he lount, & that was
Richt glaid in to his falowfhip to pas

[A]nd furth thei go, and al anarmyt thei
Come to the king, withouten more delay,
The relykes brocht, as was the maner tho,
When any knyghtes frome the court fuld g
Or when the pafsit, or quhen thei com, thei

2961

These knights
arm themselves

The trouth to schaw of euery aduentur 2224
S^r, gawan knelyng to his falowis fairs,
"The lord^s, wch that in this feking gais,
So many noble and worthi knyght^s ar ȝhe,
Me think in wavne vhour trauel shuld nocht be, 2228

[Fol. 23a]

For aduentur is non so gret to pera,
As I suppone, nor ȝhe fal It eischef,
And if ȝhe lyk as I that fhal dewyf,
Yhour oþer to swer In to the famynre wyrſ. 2232

Gawane swears
not to return till
he has found
Lancelot, or evi-
dence of him

Myne oith to kep ,”—and that thei vndertak,
How euer so that he his oith mak
It to conferf, and that thei have all fworn
Than gawan. wch that was the king beforne. 2236

On kneis fwore, "I fal the futh duclar
Of euery thing when I agan Repar,
Nor neuer more aȝhane fal I return,

Nore in o place long for to fuiorn Whill that the knyght or verray evydens I have, that shal be toknis of credens " His faloufchip abasit of that thing, And als therof anoyt was the king,	2240
---	------

Arthur reproves
him for forgetting
the coming day
of battle

Gawane says it
must be so
Gawane and his
fellows lace their
helm and take
their leave

The story returns
to the lady of
Melyhalt

She inquires
Lancelot's name

He refuses to tell

She vows to keep
him in thrall till
the day of com
bat

[Fol 28 b]

and to go to the
court to try and
learn it

Sayng, " Nece, yow haith al foly vroght
And wilfulnes, that haith nocht in thi thought
The day of batell of galot and me "

Quod gawan, " Now non other ways ma be " 2248

Thar-with he and his falowfship also

Thar halmys laſt, on to ther horſ thei go,

Syne tuk ther leſ, and frome the court the fare,

Thar names ware to long for to declar 2252

Now fal we leſ hym and his cumpany,

That in thar feling paffith buffly ,

And of the lady of melyhalt we tell,

With whome the knyght mot ned alway duell 2256

1[O] day ſhe mayd hym on to her prefens fet,

And on o fege be fid hir haith hyme fet,

" Sir, in keping I have yow halding long,"

And thus ſche fand, " for gret trefpas & wrong, 2260

Magre my ſtewart, in worfchip, and for thi

þe fuld me thonk ,"—" madem," quod he, " and I

Thonk yhow fo that euer, at my mycht,

Whar-fo I paſ that I fal be yhour knycht " 2264

" Grant mercy, ſir, bot o thing I ȝow pray,

What that þe ar þe wold wiſhauf to say "

" Madem," quod he, " yhour mercy ask I, quhy

That for to say apone no wyſ may I " 2268

" No ! wil þe not ? non oyer ways as now

þe fal repent, and ek I mak awow

One to the thing the wiſh that I beſt love,

Out frome my keping fal þe not Remuf 2272

Befor the day of the aſſembly,

Wich that, o þer, is neſeft for to bee ,

And if that ȝow haith pleſſit for to fay,

þe had fore me delhuent ben this day ,

And I fal knew, quheyer þe wil or no,

For I furth-with one to the court fal go,

¹ Room is here left in the MS for an illuminated letter, and a small "o" inserted as a note

- | | |
|--|--|
| Whar that al thithingis goith & cumyth soñ " | |
| "Madem," quod he, " yhour plefance mot be done " 2280 | |
| With that the knyght one to his chalmer goith, | The knight retires |
| And the lady hrr makith to be wroith | |
| Aȝanis hym, but futhly vas sche not, | |
| For he al out was mor in to hir thoght 2284 | |
| Than schapith fhe aȝane the ferd day, | |
| And richly sche gan hir self aray , | |
| Syne clepit haith apone her eufynes, | |
| And faith, "y will one to the court me dres , 2288 Before going to the court | |
| And malice I have schawin on to þhon knyght, | |
| For quhy he wold nocth schew me quhat he hicht, | |
| Bot so, I-wyf, It is nocth in my thocht, | |
| For worthyar non In to this erth is wroch 2292 | |
| Tharfor I pray, and hartly I requer | |
| þe mak hym al the cumpany and chere, | she prays her cousin to take care of him |
| And do hym al the worship and the esf, | |
| Excep his honore, wich that may hym plef , 2296 | |
| And quhen I cum deluerith hym als fre | |
| As he is now,—"ne have no dred," quod sche | |
| [T]he lady partit, and hir lef hath ton, | |
| And by hir Iorne to the court Is gon 2300 | |
| The king hapnit at logris for to bee, | The lady meets Arthur at Logris |
| Wich of his realme was than the chef cete , | |
| And haith hir met, and In til hartly wyf | |
| Refauit her, and welcummyt oft syf , 2304 | |
| And haith hir home one to his palice brocht, | who brings her home to his palace |
| Whar that no dante nedith to be focht, | |
| And maid hir cher with al his ful entent | |
| Eft fupur one to o chalmer ar thei went, 2308 | |
| The king and siche, and ek the quen al thre , | |
| Of hir tithandis at hir than askit hee, | |
| And what that hir one to the court had brocht? | |
| "Sir," quod siche, "I come ^l not al for nocth , 2312 and inquires wht has brought her | |

¹ MS "conne"

She says she has a friend who has made a challenge, [Fol 29 a]	I have o frend haith o dereyne ydoo, And I can fynd none able knyght tharto , For he the wiche that in the <i>contrar</i> Is Is hardy, stong, and of gret kyne, I wyf , Bot, It is said, If I myght have with me	2316
which the red lught could best maintain	3our knyght, quch in the last assamble Was in the feld, and the red armys bur, In his manhed y myght my caus affur , And yhow, fir, richt hartly I exort In to this ned my myster to support "	2320
Arthur replies that Gawane is gone to seek him	" Madem, by faith one to the quen I aw That I best loue, the knyght I never saw In nerneſ by which that I hym knew , And ek gawane Is gan hym for to few With other fourty knyghtis In to cumpany "	2324
The queen asks the lady if she knows where he is	The lady fynlyt at ther fantesly , The quen thar with pefumyt wel that sche Knew quhat he was, and said, " madem, If þe Knowith of hym what that he is, or quhar,	2328
She replies no and proposes to return	We þow besech til ws for to declar " " Madem," quod sche, " now be the faith that I Aw to the king and yhow, as for no why To court I cam, but of hym to Inquere , And sen of hym I can no tithingis here,	2332
Arthur prays her to stay	Nedlyngas to-morn homwart mon I fair " " Na," quod the king, " madem, our son It waire , þe fal remayne her for the qwenys fak , Syne þhal þe of our best knyghtis tak "	2336
	" Sir," quod sche, " I pray þow me excus , For quhy to pas nedis me behus , Nor, sen I want the knyght which I have socht , Wtheris with me to have desir I nocht ,	2340
She remains till the third day	For I of otheris have that may suffice " Bot þhit the king hir prayl on sich wyf , That sche remanit whill the thrid day , Syne tuk hir leif to pasing hom hir way	2344
		2348

- | | |
|--|---|
| She is sumptuously entertained | |
| Maid one to hir, noi company nor fare , | |
| Sche had no knyght, sche had no damysfeill, | |
| Nor thei richly rewardit war and well | 2352 |
| Now goith the lady homwart, and sche | and returns home |
| In her entent defyrs Is to fee | |
| The flour of knychthed and of chevelry , | |
| So was he prysit and hold to eueri wy | 2356 |
| T he lady, which one to hir palace come, | [Fol 29 b] |
| Bot of schort time remanith haith at home | |
| When sche gart bryng, withouten Recidens, | Soon after she sends for Lance lot |
| With grete effere this knyght to hir presens, | |
| And said hym , “ fer, so mekil have I focht | 2360 |
| And knowith that be-for I knew nocht | |
| That If yhow lyk I wil yhou Ransone mak ’ | |
| “ Madem, gladly, wil ȝe wichefauf to tak | 2364 |
| After that as my powar may atteñ, | and proposes to ransom him |
| Or that I may prowid be ony meñ ” | |
| “ Now, fer,” sho said, “ forfuth It fal be so, | |
| Yhe fal have thre, and cheſ yhow on of tho , | 2368 on one of three conditions |
| And if yhow lykith them for to refus , | |
| I can no mor, but ȝe fal me excus , | |
| Yhe nedis mot fuſten yhour aduentur | |
| Contynualy In ward for til endur ” | 2372 |
| “ Madem,” quod he, “ and I yhow hartly pray, | |
| What that thei say ȝe wald wichefauf to say ? ” | |
| “ [T]he first,” quod sche, “ who hath in to the cheſ | Either he must tell whom he loves |
| Of low yhour hart, and if ȝe he may dereñ ? | 2376 |
| The next, yhour nam, the which ȝe fal not lye ? | |
| The thrid, if euer ȝe think of cheualry | |
| So mekl worship to atten in feild | |
| Apone o day in armys wnder scheſ, | |
| As yat ȝe dyd the famyne day, when ȝe | or declare his name |
| In red armys was at the affembly ? ” | or say if he expects again to equal his former exploits |
| | |

¹ So MS We should probably read "bee"

- “ Madem,” quod he, “ is thar non vther way
Me to redem, but only thus to fay 2384
Of thingis, which that Rynyth me to blam,
Me to awant my lady or hir name ?
But If that I most schawin furth that one,
What suerte schal I have for to gone 2388
At libertee out of this danger free ? ”
- “ Schur, for to dred no myfiter is,” quod fhee ,
“ As I am trew and faſthfull woman hold,
ȝhe fal go fre quhen one of thir is told ” 2392
“ Madem, yhour will non vther ways I may,
I mone obey , and to the firſt y fay,
^{He refuses to tell his lady's name,}
^{1 [I]s, to declar the lady of myne hart,}
My goſt fal rather of my breſt aſtart ”— 2396
Whar-by the lady fayndit al for noct
The lowe quich long hath ben In to his thocht—
“ And of my nam, ſhortly for to fay,
It ſtondith fo that one no wyſ I may 2400
^{or his own}
Bot of the thrid, madem, I ſe that I
Mon fay the thing that tuechith velany ,
but declares that he truſts to do more than ever before, and requires his liberty
For fuli it is I trait, and god before,
In feld that I fal do of armys more 2404
Than euer I did, if I commandit bee
And now, madem, I have my libertee,
For I have ſaid I neuer thocht to fay ”
“ Now, fir,” quod ſche, “ when euer ȝhe wil ye may, 2408
Bot o thing Is, I yhow hartly raquer,
Sen I have hold yhow apone fuch maner
Not as my fo, that ȝhe vald grant me till
“ Madem,” quod he, “ It fal be as ȝhe will ” 2412
“ Now, fir,” quod ſche, “ it is no thing bot ȝhe
Remain with ws wn to the afſemble,
And euery thyng that In yhour myfiter lyis
I fall gar ordan at yhour awn dewyſ , 2416

^{She begs of him a boon}

^{that he will remain with her till the day of battle,}

¹ A space is here left for an illuminated letter

- And of the day I shall yow certefy
 Of the assemble þe fal not pas therby "
- " Madem," quod he, " It fal be as yhow lift "
- " Now, sir," quod sche, " and than I hald It best, 2420
 That þe reman lyk to the famyne dogre
 As that þe war, yat non fal wit that þe
 Deluerit war , and in to facret wyf
- Thus may þe be , and now yhe fal dewyf 2424
 What armys that yhow lykyt I gar mak "
- " Madem," quod he, " armys al of blak "
- With this, this knyght is to his chalmer gon ,
 The lady gan ful prewaly diffpone 2428
- For al that longeth to the knyght, in feild ,
 Al blak his horȝ, his armour, and his scheld,
 That nedful is, al thing sche well prewidith ,
 And in hir keping thus with hir he bidith 2432
 Suppos of love sche takyne hath the charg,
 Sche bur It clos, ther-of sche vas not larg,
 Bot wyfly sche abstenit hir diffir,
 For ellis quhat, sche knew, he was afyre , 2436
 Thar for hir wit hir worship haith defendit,
 For in this world thar was nan mor commendit,
 Boith of discreccione and of womanhed,
 Of gouernans, of nurtur, and of farhed 2440
 This knyght with hir thus al this whil mon duell,
 And furth of arthur sumthing wil we tell—
 [T]hat walkyng vas furth in to his Regiounis,
 And soiornyt in his ceteis and his townis, 2444
 As he that had of visdome sufficyans
 He kept the lore of maister amyntans
 In ryghtwyfnes, In festing and larges,
 In cherning cumpany and hanlynes ,
 For he was biffy and was diligent,
 And largly he iifith, and dispent
 Rewardis, boith one to the pur & riche,
 And holdith feft throw al the þer eliche 2448
 and inquires what arms he would like to have made for him. He chooses black armour
- which is provided
- She keeps her love close
- being commend ed for discretion
- The story returns to Arthur—
- [FOL 30 b]
- who obeys the counsel of Amy ntans
- and gives away largely

In al the warld passing gan his name,
 He chargit not bot of enclef^s and fame,
 And how his puples hartas to emplef^s,
 Thar gladnes ay was to his hart most e^c 2456
 He rakith not of riches nor tressour,
 Bot to dispend one worfhip & honour ,
 He ifith riches, he ifith lond and rent,
 He cherifyth them with word^s eloquent, 2460
 and thus gains his
people's love So that thei can them vtraly propone
 In his seruice thar lyves to dispone
 So gladith theme his homely contynans,
 His cherifing, his wordis of plefans, 2464
 His cumpany, and ek his mery chere,
 His gret rewardis, and his ift^s fere
 Thus hath the king non vthir besynes
 Bot cherifing of knychtis and largef^s,
 To mak hym self of honour be commend , 2468
 And thus the ȝher he drywth to the ende

EXPLICIT SECUNDA PARS, INCIPIT TERCIA PARS

[BOOK III]

- T**he long durk pasag¹ of the vinter, & the lycht
Of phebus comprochit with his mycht, 2472
The which, ascending In his altitud,
Awodith saturn with his fStormys Rude,
The soft dew one fra the hewyne dounre valis²
Apone the erth, one hillz, and on valis, 2476
And throw the sobir & the mwst hwmouris
Vp nurisit ar the erbis, and in the floures
Natur the erth of many diuer^b hew
Our fret, and cled with the tendu new
The birdis may them hiding in the grawis
Wel frome the halk, that oft ther lyf berevis,
And scilla hie ascending in the ayre,
That euery vight may heryng hir declar
Of the feffone the passing luftynes
This was the tyme that phebus gan hym dres^c
In to the rame, and haith his cour^b bygown,
Or that the trewis and the ȝher vas Rown,
Which was y-fet of galot and the king
Of thar assamble, and of thar meting
Arthur haith a xv dais before
Affemblit al his barnag and more
That weryng wnder his subieccioune,
Or louith hym, or longith to his crown,
And haith his Iornay tone, withouten let,
On to the place the wich that was y fet, 2488
Whar he hath found befoi hym mony o knyght
That cummyng war with al thar holl mycht,
- The sun ascends
in his altitude
- The soft dew
falls down from
heaven
- Nature decks the
earth with vari
ous hues. The
birds may hide
[Fol 31 a]
- them from the
hawk in the
groves and Scilla
may ascend in
the air
- The time of com
bat between
Galot and the
king diew near
- Arthur goes to
the appointed
place

¹ So MS Should we read "pasith"?² So MS It should be "falis"

- Al enarmyt both *with* spere & sheld,
And ful of lug^s plantith haith the feld, 2500
Hyme In the wer for to suppoit and ferf
At al ther mycht, his thonk for to differf
And gawan, which was in the feking ȝhit
Of the gud knyght, of hym haith got no wit, 2504
 Gawane rememb
beis the day
 and proposes to
his fellows to go
to help the king
 [Fol 31 b]
 Arthur is well
content at their
coming
 not expecting
them
 Galiot also as
sembles his folk
- Remembrith hym apone the king^s day,
And to his falowis one thus wys can fay
“ To ȝhow is knowin the mater, in what wyl^s
How that the king hath *with* his ennemys 2508
A certan day, that now comprochit nere,
And one to ws war hewynes to here
That he var in to perell or in to dreid,
And we away and he of ws haith neid , 2512
For we but hym no thing may eschef,
And he but ws in honore well may lef ,
For, be he loft, we may no thing wifitond,
Our-self, our honore we tyne, & ek our lond 2516
Tharfor, I red we pas on to the king,
Suppos our oth It hurt in to sum thing,
And in the feld *with* hym for til endur,
Of lyf or deth and tak our aduentur ” 2520
Thar-to thei ar consentit euerilkon,
And but dulay the have thar Iorney toñe
When that the king them faw, in *his* entent
Was of thar com Right wonder well content , 2524
For he prefwmyt no thing that thei wold
Have cummyne, but one furt^h to yer feking hold
And thus the kinghis oft assenblit has
Aȝane the tyme, aȝaine the day that vas 2528
Y-statut and ordanit for to bee,
And euery thing hath fet in the dogre
[A]nd galiot, that haith no thing forȝhet
The termys quich that he befor had set, 2532
Assenblit has, apone his best maner,
His folk, and al his other things^s fere,

- | | | |
|--|------|---|
| That to o weryour longith to p'owid,
And is y-come apone the tothir fyde
Whar he befor was one than vas he two,
And al his vthir artuljery also | 2536 | doubling his army and artil-
lery |
| He dowblith hath, that merwell was to fen ,
And by the reweref lychtit one the greñ,
And stronghar thane ony wallit toune
His oft y bout yclofit in Randoune
Thus war thei cummyne apone ather syd
Be-for the tyme, them-self for to p'owid
Or that the trewis was complet & rwn,
Men mycht have fen one euery fid hegwn
Many a fair and knyghtly Iuperty
Of lusty men, and of ȝong chevalry,
Difyrus In to armys for to pruf ,
Sum for wwynng, sum causith vas for luf,
Sum In to worship to be exalitate,
Sum causit was of wordis he & hate,
That lykit not ydill for to ben ,
A hundereth pair at onis one the grn
Thir lusty folk thus can thar tyme dispend,
Whill that the trewis goith to the ende
The trewis paft, the day is cummyne onoñe,
One euery syd the can them to dispone ,
And tha that war most facret & most dere
To galhot, at hym the can enquere,
“ Who fal assamble one yhour syd to morne ?
To-nycht the trewis to the end is worne ”
He anfuerit, “ As yhit one to this were
I ame awyfit I wil none armys bere, | 2540 | and pitches on
the green by the
river |
| I ame awyfit I wil none armys bere,
Bot If It stond of more Neceſſitee ,
Nor to the feld will pas, bot for to fee
Yhone knycht, the which that berith fich o fame ”
Than clepit he the conquest king be name,
And hym commandit xxx thouſand tak
Aȝaine the morne, and for the feld hym mak | 2544 | Before the truce
is ended |
| Aȝaine the morne, and for the feld hym mak | 2548 | many combats
are seen between
lusty men |
| A hundred pair
at once | 2552 | |
| The truce past | 2556 | |
| Gahot's friends
inquire who shall
fight on his side
on the morrow | 2560 | |
| [Fol 32a] | 2564 | |
| He commands
the first con-
quest king to
take 30 000 men | 2568 | |

	And gawane haith, apone the toye ^r syde,	
	Confulit has Eme he schuld for them p ^r owid,	2572
	And that he schuld none armys to hyme tak	
	Whill ¹ galiot will for the feld hyme mak	
	"I grant," quod [he ²], "wharfoi þe mone dispone	
Gawane leads Arthur's forces	Yhow to the feld with al my folk to morne,	2576
	And thinkith in yhour manhed and curage	
	For to recift þhone folkas gret cwtrag "	
The day comes	[T]he nycht is gone, vp goith the morow gray,	
	The brycht sone fo cherith al the day	2580
	The knychtis gone to armys than, in haft,	
	One goith the fcheildis and the helmyss last,	
Arthur's men cross the ford	Arthuris oft out our the furde tha 1yd	
	And tha agane, apone the toye ^r syd,	2584
Gahot's men as semble in a vale	Afemblit ar apone o lufty greyne,	
	In to o waill, whar sone tha mycht be seyne	
	Of knychtis to gedder many o pair	
	In to the feld assemblyng her & thair,	2588
	And stedis which that haith tha master lorne, ³	
	The knychtis war done to the erth dounne borne	
Sir Esquyris a manly knight	S ^r esquyris, which was o manly knycht	
	In to hymself, and hardy vas & wycht,	2592
	And in till armys gretly for to prif ^s ,	
	þnt he was puie, he prewit wel oft-fyf ^s ,	
at that time of Gahot's com- pany	And that tyme was he of the cumpانee	
	Of galiot, bot afterward was hee	
	With arthur, and that day In to the feild	2596
	He come, al armyt Both with spere and scheld,	
	With ferf ^s desir, as he that had na dout,	
attacks a band	And is afemblit ewyne apone a rowt,	2600
	His spere is gone, the knycht goith to the erd,	
	And out onon he pullith haith o fwerd,	
and proves his manhood	That day In armys prewit he rycht well	
	His strent, his manhed, arthurius folk tha fell	2604

¹ MS "Wihill"² Omitted in MS³ MS has "borne" We should read "lorne," as in line 2092

- Than galys gwynans, w^th o manly hart,
Which broyer was of ywane the baftart,
He cummyne Is onone one to the stour
For conquering In armys of honour, 2608 [Fol 22 b]
And cownterit with esquyris hath so
That¹ hor^b and man, al four, to erth thai go ,
And stull o quhill lying at the ground
With that o part of arthuri^s folk thei found 2612
Till gwyans, and haith hyme fone refkewit
A^zanis them til esquyris thei fewyt
Of galot^s well xxx^a knyctis & mo ,
Gwyans goith done, and vthir vij also, 2616 thirty knights of
The wch war tone & esqwyris relewit
Than ywane the anterus, aggrewit,
With kynnifmen one to the melle focht 2620
The hardy knyctis, that one thar worfhip thocht,
Cownterit them In myddis of the fheld,
Whar many o knycht was born doñ in the feld ,
Bot thei wch ware on galot^s part, 2624 Galot^s men give
So wndertakand nor of fo hardy hart
Ne ware thei not as was in ye contrare
Si galys gwyans was refqwytt thare
With his falowis, and esqwyris don bore 2628
Thar al the batells cam, withouten more,
On ather part, and is assemblyt fo
Whar fyfty thoufand war thei, & no mo
In o plane besyd the gret Riwere 2632 50 000 men are
Xxx thoufand one galot^s half thei vare ,
Of arthuri^s x thoufand and no mo
Thei ware, and ȝhit thai contemnit them fo
And in the feld fo manly haith bornⁿ
That of thar fois haith the feld forfworⁿ 2636
The conquest king, wch the peyell knowith,
Ful manly one to the feld he drowth ,
The lord fir gawan, couerit with his fheld, Gawane puts the
conquest-king to flight

¹ MS has "than"

- He rufchit in myddis of the feld, 2640
 And haith them so in to his com affayt,
 That of his manhed ware thei al affrait,
 No lange^r mycht thei contrar hyme endur,
 Bot fled, and goith one to discumfitue 2644
 And galot, wich haith the discumfit fen,
 Fulfillit ful of anger and of ten,
 Incontinent he fend o new poware,
 Whar with the feldas al our couerit ware 2648
 Of armyt stedes bot^r in plait and mail,
 With knyctis wich war ieddy to affaill
 Sir gawan, feing al the gret suppris
 Of fois cummyng In to sich o wys, 2652
 Togiddir al his cumpany he drew,
 And confortable wordis to them schedew,
 So at the cummyng of thar ennemys
 Thei them refauf, in so manly wyf, 2656
 That many one feithd deithis wound,
 And wnder horf lyth sowing one the ground
 This vther cummyng in to gret desir,
 Fulfillit ful of matealent and Ire, 2660
 So frefchly, with so gret o confiuens,
 Thar stong affay hath don sich vyolens,
 And at thar come arthu^rs folk so led,
 That thar war ay abayfit and adred 2664
 Bot gawan, wich that, by this worldis fame,
 Of manhed and of knyctis bur the name,
 Haith prewit [hym] well be experiens,
 For only In til armys his defens 2668
 Haith maid his falowis tak sich hardyment,
 That manfully thei biding one the bent
 Of his manhed war me^r well to raherf,
 The knyctis throw the scheldis can he perf, 2672
 That many one thar dethis haith refauit,
 None armour frome his mychty hond them fauit,
 Sbit ay for one ther ennemys wor thre

Gallot full of an
gei and grief
sends out a new
band

[Fol. 33 a]

Gawane draws
his men together
and shews them
comfortable
words

They rece ye the
foe in manly wise

Gawane encour-
ages his fellows

though their foes
are three to one

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| Long mycht thei nocht endur in such degree ,
The pref it wos fo creuell & fo strong,
In gret annoy and haith continewit longe,
That, magre them, thei nedas most abak
The way one to thar lugis for to tak
<i>Sir gawan</i> thar fufferith gret mysfchef,
And wonderis in his knyckthed can he pref ,
His falouschip haith merwell that hym faw,
So haith his fois that of his fuerd stud aw
King arthur, that al this whill beheld
The danger and the perell of the feld,
<i>Sir ywan</i> with o falowfship he fende,
Them In that ned to help & to defend,
Qwiche fond them In to danger and in were,
And enterit nere In to thar tentis were
<i>Sir gawan</i> fechtand was one fut At erde,
And no defend, but only in his fwerde,
Azzanus them both with spere and scheld
Of galowa the knyght goith to the erde ¹
Thar was the batell furyous and woud ²
Of armys, to the grownde thair shud
<i>Sir ywane</i> , that was a noble knyght,
He schew his strentch, he schew thar his gret mycht,
In al his tyme that neuer of before
Off armys, nore of knyckthed, did he more
<i>Sir gawan</i> thar refkewit he of fors,
Magre his fois, and haith hyme fet one horf
That frome the first conquest king he wan ,
Bot <i>sir gawan</i> so ewill was wondit than,
And in the feld supprisit was fo fore,
That he the werf ³ thar-of was euermore
Thar schew the lord <i>sir ywan</i> his curage,
His manched, & his noble wassilage ,
And gawan, in his doing, wald nocht irk , | 2676
2680
2684
2688
[Fol 93 b]
2692
2696
2700
2704
2708 | yet his men are
forced to retreat
to their tents
Arthur beholds
the peril of the
field and sends
<i>Sir Ywan</i> to help
them
who finds Sir
Gawane fighting
on foot with only
his sword
The battle was
furious and wood. |
|--|---|---|

¹ Read "felde"? ² MS "woid," but the "i" is undot'ed, and is therefore perhaps meant for the first stroke of a "u"

- Darkness parts
the combatants So al the day enduring to the dyrk
 Sal them, magre of thar defyre, *confren*
 On ayar half fore [to] depart in twen 2712
 And when that gawan of his horſe vas toñ,
 The blud out of his noſe & mouth is goñ,
 And largly fo paſſith euerie wounde,
Sir Gawane
swoons, In fwonyng thore he fell one to the ground 2716
 Than of the puple petee was to here
 The lemytable clamour, and the chere ,
so that the king
despairs of his
niece's life and
laments over
him And of the king the forow and the care ,
 That of his neceſſ lyf was in diffpare 2720
 "Far well," he faiſ, " my gladnes, & my delyt,
 Apone knychthed far well myne appetit,
 Fare well of manhood al the gret curage,
 Yow flour of armys and of vaffolage, 2724
 Gif yow be loft !"—thus til his tent hymē brocht
The surgeons are
sought, With wofull hart, and al the furryȝenis focht,
 Wich for to cum was reddy at his neid ,
 Thaſ fond the lord was of his lyf in dreid, 2728
 For wondit was he, and ek wondit fo,
 And in his fyd ware brokyne Ribys two
 Bot noct̄ for-thi the king thaſ maid beleif
 That at that tyme he ſhuld the deith eschef 2732
[P. 34 a] [O]ff melyhalt the ladyis knyctis were
 In to the feld, and can thir tithingis here,
 And home to thar lady ar thaſ went,
 Til hir to ſchewing after thar entent, 2736
 In euery poyn̄t, how that the batell ſtud
 Of galot, and of his multitud ,
 And how gawan hymē in the feld hath borñ,
 Throw quhoys fwerd fo many o knycht vas lorn̄, 2740
 And of the knyghtly wonderis that he wrocht,
 Syne how that he one to his tent vas brocht
 The lady hard, that lowrit gawan so,
 She gan to wep, in to¹ hir hart vas wo 2744
She weeps for
him

¹ MS "in in", but "in to" is clearly meant

- Thir tythyngis one to lancelot ar goñ,
Whar of that he was wonder wo bygone,
And for the lady haftely he sent,
And fche tl hymē, at his command, Is went 2748
He faluft hir, and faid, " madem, Is trew
Thir tithingis I hei report of new
Of the assamble, and meting of the oft,
And of fir gawan, wch that shuld be loft? 2752
If that be fwth, adew the flour of armys,
Now neuē more recoueryt be the harmys!
In hymē was manched, curteffy, and trouth,
Befy travell In knychthed, ay but fleuth,
Humilyte, [and] gentrice, and cwrug,
In hymē thar was no maner of outrage
Allace! knycht, allace! what shal yow fay?
Yow may complen, yow may bewail the day
As of his deith, and gladifchip aucht to ses,
Baith menfrafy and festing at the des,
For of this lond he was the noll comfort,
In tyme of ned al knychthed to support!
Allace! madem, and I durft fay at-ȝhe
Al yhour beheft not kepit hairth to me,
Whar of that I was in to full belef
Aȝaȝe this day that I schuld have my lef, 2764
And noct̄ as coward thus schamfully to ly
Excludit in to cage frome chewalry,
Whar oþur knyctas anarmyt on thar stedis
Hawnts ther ȝhouthhed in to knychtly dedis" 2772
" Sir," quod fche, " I red yhow not dyples,
ȝhe may In tyme her-ȝter cum at es,
For the thrid day Is ordanit, & shal be
Of the oft̄ a new assamble,
And I have gart ordan al the gere
That longith to ȝour body for to were,
Boith horȝ and armoui In the famyne wyf
Of fable, ewyne aftur ȝhour awn dewyf, 2780
saying that his
sable armour is
ready
- Lancelot re
quests to see the
lady
- and inquires if
Gawane is really
likely to die
- He laments over
him
- first apostro
phizing himself
- and next blaming
the lady for not
having allowed
him to be present
in the battle
- [Fol 34b]
- She promises he
shall go to the
next battle

And yhe fal her remayne one to the day ,
 Syne may ȝhe pas, fore well ȝhe knew the way ”
 “I will obey, madem, to yhour entent ”

With that fche goith, and to hir reft is went 2784

In the morn she takes her leave,
 to go to the court

One the morn aily vp fche iof

Without delay, and to the knyght fche gois,

And twk hir lef, and said that fcho vald fare

On to the court, with outen any mae 2788

He kneels and thanks her often

Than knelit he, and thankit hir oft-sys,

That fche fo mych hath done hyme of gentrif,

And hir byhecht euer, at his myght,

To be hir awn trew & stedfaſt knyght 2792

She goes unto the king,

Sche thonkith hyme, and syne fche goith her way

On to the king, with owten moie delay,

Whai that in¹ honour with king & qwen fche fall

Rycht thonkfullly refauit be with all 2796

Eft to fir gawan thaſ hir led, & fche

Ryght gladly hym defynt for to fee,

And fche hyme fond, and fche was glad tharfore,

All vthir ways than was hir told before 2800

The knyght, the wch in to hu keping vas,

Sche had commandit to hir cuffynece,

Wich cherifft hyme apone hir beft manere,

And comfort hym, and maid hym rycht gud chere 2804

and finds Sir Gawane quite dif
 ferent from what
 had been told
 her

The lady a cousin
 cherishes Lance-
 lot in her best
 manner

[T]he days goith, so paffith als the nyght,

The thrid morow, as that the fone vas lycht,

The knyght onon out of his bed arof,

The maden fone one to his chalmer gof, 2808

And facretly his armour one hyme spent

He tuk his lef, and fyne his way he went

Ful prewaly, rycht to the famyne greñ

One the rewere, whar he befor had ben, 2812

Ewyne as the day [he] the first courſ hath maad

Alone rycht thaſ he howit, and abaade,

¹ MS “with,” which is crossed out, and “in” inserted above, rather minutely written

- Behalding to the bertes, whai the qweñ
 Befor at the assamble he had señ
 Ryght so the fone schewith furth his lycht,
 And to his armour went is euery wycht,
 One athur half the Iustring is bygon,
 And many o fair and knych[t]ly courſ is roun 2816
 The blak knyght ȝhit howyns on his sted,
 Of al thar doing takith he no hed,
 Bot ay, apone the befynes of thocht,
 In beholding his ey departit noct 2824
 To quhom the lady of melyhalt beheld,
 And knew hym by his armour & his scheld,
 Qwhat that he was , and thus ſche faid one hycyth
 "Who is he zone? who may he be, ȝhone knyght, 2828
 So ſtill that hovith and fterith not his Ren,
 And ferth the knychtis rynyng one the greñ?"
 Than al beholdith, and in princypale
 Sir gawan beholdith moft of all, 2832
 Of melyha[ll]t the lady to hym maid
 Incontinent, his couche and gart be had
 Be fore o wyndew thore, as he mycht ſe
 The knycht, the oft, and al the assamble 2836
 He lukith furth, and fone the knycht hath fen,
 And, but delay, he faith one to the qwen,
 "Madem, if ȝhe remembir, fo it was
 The red knycht in to the famyne place 2840
 That wenclift al [at] the firſt assamble,
 Whar that zone knycht howis, howit hee"
 "ȝha," quod the qwen, "rycht well remembir I ,
 Qwhat is the cauſ at ȝhe inquere, & quhy?" 2844
 "Madem, of [al] this larg warld is he
 The knycht the wiche I moft deſir to fee
 His strenth, his manhed, his curag, and his mycht,
 Or do in armys that longhit to o knycht" 2848
 [B]y thus, arthur, with confell well awyfit,
 Haith ordanit his batellis, and devyfit
- [l o l 3. a]
 He abides there alone looing to wards the parapet where he saw the queen
- The jousting begins
 The black knight still riſts on his ſteed
- The lady beholds him and knows him but yet inquires who he is
- thus calling the attention of gra wane
- who ſarth to the queen
 Madam remember that the red knight halteſ where yon knight halts
- "Why do you inquire? ſhe replies
 'He is the knight madam whom I moft desire to see'
- Arthur arranges his lines of battle

- King Ydius leads
the first
- Harwy the Re
weyll an aged
knight the
second
- [Fol 355]
- King Angus a
cousin of Arthur,
leads the third
- King Ywons the
fourth
- In every com
pany are 15,000
- The lord sir
Ywan leads the
rearward
- Galiot's armies
- Malengynys leads
the first line,
- the first conquest
king the second,
Walydeyne the
third,
- Clamedeus the
fourth,
- and King Bran
dymagus the
fifth
- The fist of them led ydrus king, & he
O worthy man vas nemmyt for to bee 2852
The secund led harwy the Reweyll,
That in this world was knyght that had most feill
For to provid that longith to the were,
One agut knyght, and well couth armys bere 2856
[T]he thrid feld [he] deliuert in the hond
Of angus, king of ylys of scotlande,
Wich cusing was one to king arthur nere,
One hardy knyght he was, withouten were 2860
The ferd batell led ywons the king,
O manly knyght he was In to al thing
And thus dewynt ware his batells sere,
In euery feld xv thousand were 2864
[T]he fift¹ batell the lord f² ywan lede,
Whois marshed was in euery cuntry dred,
Sone he was one to wryne the kyng,
Forwart, stout, hardy, wyf, and zhing , 2868
Xx thoufand in his oft thai paft,
Wich ordanit was for to assemble laft
[A]nd galiot, apone the tothir syde,
Ryght wyfly gan his batells to dewid 2872
The fist of them led malengynys the king,
None hardyar In to this erth lewyng ,
He neuer more out of his cuntry Raid,
Nor he with hym one hundereth knychtus hade 2876
[T]he secund the first conquest king led,
That for no perell of armys vas adred ,
The thrid, o king clepit walydeyne,
He led, and was o manly knyght, but weyne 2880
[T]he ferd, king clamedeus has,
Wich that lord of far ylys was
The fift² batell, whar xl thousand were,
King brandymagus had to led and sterte, 2884

¹ MS "firft" See 1 2870² MS "firft "

- | | | |
|--|------|---|
| O manly knyght, and prewit well oft syf,
And in his confell wonder fchamp & wyf
Galiot non aimys bur that day,
Nor as o knyght he wald hymself array, | 2888 | Gahiot bore no arms |
| But as o feruand in o habariowne,
O prekyne hat, and ek o giet townsclown
In til his hond, and one o cuifour fet, | 2892 | but was arrayed as a servant in a habergon with a prekyne hat and a truncheon in his hand |
| The best that was in ony lond to get
Endlong the iewar men mycht behold & fee,
Of knychtis weryne mony one assamble, | 2896 | The black knight still remains looking towards the parapet |
| And the blak knyght stull he couth abyde,
Without remowyng, one the Riwer syde,
Bot to the bartes to behold and fee | 2900 | The lady says to the queen [Fol. 38 a] |
| Tha as his hart defynt most to bee
And quhen the lady of melyhalt haith feñ
The knyght fo stond, sche faid one to the qweñ, | 2904 | Madam pray commend your self to yon knyght |
| “ Madem, It is my confell at þe send
One to zone knycht, ȝour self for to command,
Befeching hym that he wald wnder tak | 2908 | The queen rephes |
| This day to do of aimys, for ȝour fak ”
The quen ansuerit as that hir lykit nocth,
For oþhir thing was more In to hir thocht, | 2912 | that the lady and the rest may send a message but that she will not herself take part in it |
| “ For well ȝhe se the perell how disio[1]nt,
The adwentur now stondith one the point
Boith of my lord his honore, and has lond, | 2916 | |
| And of his men, ^{m¹} danger how thaft stond
Bot ȝhe, and ek thur vther ladice may,
If that yhow lykith, to the knyght gai fay | | |
| The mesag, is none that wil yhow let,
For I tharof fal nocth me entermet ”
On to the quen ȝicho faith, “ her I, | | |
| If so it pleß thur vþir ladice by,
Am for to fend one to the knyght content ,”
And al the ladice can thar to assent, | | |

¹ Stevenson reads "the", but "the" is crossed out, and "in" written over it

- Befeching hir the mesag to dewyf,
As fche that was most prudent & most wyf 2920
 The lady sends a
discreet maiden
 and Sir Gawane a
squire with two
spears
- The lady than, withouten more dulay,
Haith chargit hir apone this wyf to say
 to say that all the
ladies the queen
alone excepted
commend them to
the black knight 2924
- “Schaw to the knyght, the ladice euer-ilkone
Ben In the court, excep the quen allon,
Til hym them haith recommandit oft fyf,
Befeching hym of knykhed and gentrif,
(Or if It h̄ypne euermore that he fhall
Cum, quhar thai may, oþther an or all,
In ony thing awal hyme or fupport,
Oi do hym ony plesans or comfort,) 2928
- He wold wicheaf for loue of them this day
In armys fum manhed to affay ,
And say, f̄n gawan hym the sferis fent ,
Now go, this is the fek of our entent ”
 and pray him to
ess̄y some deed
of arms
- The damsel and
squire
 [Fol 36 b]
 rep̄it the mes
sage
 Sir I ancelot find
ing the quen not
in the message
 was not content,
- The damyfell fche hath hir palfray tone,
The sqwyar with the sferis with hir gon ,
The neȝt way thai paȝ one to ye knyght,
Whai fche repeþe hir mesag haith ful rycht
And quhen he hard, and planly wnderfitude,
How that the quen not in the mesag ȝude,
He spak no word, bot he was not content ,
Bot, of f̄r gawan, glaid in his entent,
He askit quhar he was, and of his fair ?
 And thai to hym the maner can duclair , 2936
- but asks the
squire to hold the
two spears ready
for him
- Than the sqwyar he prayth that he wold
Paȝ to the feld, the sferis for to hold
He saw the knyghtis femblyng her and thare,
The stedis Rynnyng with the fadillis bare ,
His sferis goith in to the stedis syde,
That was ful swyft, and lykit not to byd , 2940
 2944
 2948
 2952

- And he that was hardy, fer³, and stout,
Furth by o fyd affemblyng on a rout 2956 He attacks a
Whar that one hundereth knychtis was, & mo , company of a
And with the firt has Recounterit so, hundred knights
That frome the deth not helpith hym his scheld,
Boith hor³ and man is lying in the feld , 2960
The spere is gone, and al in pecis brak,
And he the trunfeyoune in his hand hath tak
That two or thre he haith the sadilles reft,
Whill in his hond schortly no thing is left 2964 and with the
Syne, to the squyar, of the feld is goⁿ, spear beaves
Fio hym e spere In to his hond haith ton, two or three of
And to the feld returnyt he azayne their saddles
The firt he met, he goith one the plan, 2968 He takes a new
And ek the next, and fyne the thrid alfo , spear from the
Nor in his hond, nore in his strak was ho
His enemys that veryng In affray
Befor his strak, and makith rovm alway , 2972
And in fiche wyf ay in the feld he vrocht,
Whill that his spenis gon var al to noct^t,
Whar-of fir gawan berith vitnesing
Throw al this world that thar vas non levynge, 2976
In so schort tyme so mych of armys wrocht
His spenis gone, out of the feld he focht,
And passit is one to the Rewere syde, 2980 His spears gone
Ryght thore as he was wont for to abyde , he returns to his
And so beholdyne In the famyne plaⁿ, [Fol. 87 a]
As to the feld hym lykit noct^t azaⁿ
Sir gawan faw, and faith on to the quen,
" Madem, yhone knycht disponit [not],¹ I weyn, 2984 Sir Gawane says
To help ws more, fore he so is awyfit , ' Madam you
As I pefume, he thinkith hym dispist knight thinks
Of the mesag that we gart to hym mak , himself despised
Yhowre-self yhe have so specially out tak, 2988 because you so
specially excepted yourself in the message

¹ "not" seems required

- He thinkith ewill contempnit for to bee,
 Considering how that the neceffitee
 Moft principally to yhowr ſupporting lyis
 Tharfor my confell is, yhowr to dewyf,
 And ek ȝhowre ſelf in yhowr t̄ eſpas accuf²,
 Ask him mercy therefore and excuse your guilt
 And aft hym mercy, and yhour gilt excuf
 For well it oucht o prince or o king
 Til honore and til cherif in al thing
 O worthi man, that is in knychthed p̄ ewit
 For thioſ the body of o man eſchevit
 Mony o wondir, mony one aduenture,
 That merwell war til any creature
 And als oft-tyme is boith hard & fen,
 Quhar xl thouſand haith diſcumfit ben
 Vith v thouſand, and only be o knycht,
 For throw his ſtrength, his voifchip, & his mycht,
 His falowſhip ſich comfort of hym tuis
 That thaſ ne dreid the danger of thar iays
 And thus, madem, I wot, withouten were,
 If that ȝhone knycht this day will perſyweire
 If you knight will continue to help
 the king
 W̄th his manhed for helping of the king,
 We fal have cauf to dred in to no thing
 Our folk of hym that fal ſich comfort tak,
 And fo adied thar ennemys fal mak,
 That fur I am, onys or the nycht,
 Yon folk ſhall perſone take to flight
 Of forþ ȝhone folk fal tak one them the flycht
 Wharfor, madem, that ȝhe have gilt to mend,
 My confell is one to ȝhon knycht ze fend"
 She conſents to send a message
 "Sir," quod ſche, "quhat pleſſith yhowr to do
 ȝhe may dewyf, and I conſent thar-to"
 Than was the lady of melyhalt content,
 And to fur gawan in-to contynent
 Sche clepit the maid, wiſh that paſſit ar,
 A maiden is therefore ſent to ſay
 And he hir bad the meſag thus duclar
 "Say [to]¹ the knycht, the quen hir recommendith,

[Fol 27 b]

A maiden is therefore ſent to ſay

¹ "to" seems required

- | | | |
|---|------|---|
| And fal correk in quhat that s̄che offendith
At his awn will, how so hym lift dewyf,
And hym exortith, in moſt humyll wylf,
As euer he will, whar that ſche can or may,
Or powar haith hir charg, be ony way,
And for his worſhip and his hie manhede,
And for hir luf, to helpen in that ned
The kingz honore, his land fore to preferf,
That he hu thonk for euer may deferf” | 3024 | that the queen
humblly exhortſ
him |
| And four fquaris chargit he alſo
With thre horſ and ſperis x to go
Furth to the knycht, hym prayng for his fak,
At his rauesth thame in his ned to tak | 3028 | to help in that
need to preserve
the king's
honour and to
deserve her
thunks |
| [T]he maden furth with the fquaris is went
One to the knycht, and ſchawith yar entent
Tho mesag haid, and ek ye piefent ſefi,
He anſwerit, and afkith of the qwen , | 3032 | Sir Gawane also
ſends four ſquires
with three horses
and ten ſpears |
| “Su,” quod ſche, [“ſche] in to zhone bartus lyis,
Whar that this day yhour dedis fal dewyf,
Yhour manhed, yhour worſhip, and affere,
How þe conten, and how yhe armys bere, | 3036 | The message
heard he inquires
about the queen |
| The quen hir-ſelf, and many o lady to,
Sal Iugz be, and vitnes how yhe do ”
Than he, whois hart ftant in o new array,
Saith, “damyceyll, on to my lady fay, | 3040 | and is told that
from you parapet
she can witness
his deeds |
| How euer that hir lykith that it bee,
Als far as wit or powar is in me,
I am hir knycht, I fal at hir command
Do at I may, withouten more demand | 3044 | |
| And to fur gawan, for his gret gentrif,
Me recommend and thonk a thouſand fyf ”
With that o ſpeſ he takith in his hond,
And fo in to his ſterapis can he ftond | 3048 | He returns a
message that he
is the queen's
knight |
| That to fur gwan femyth that the knycht | 3052 | |
| | 3056 | He stands in his
ſtirrups and
ſeems to increase
a foot in height |

¹ A second "sche" is here required.

Encrefysng gon o larg fut one hycht,
 And to the ladice faith he, and the qwen,
 "Jhon is the knyght that euer I have sen
 In al my tyme most knyghtly of affere,
 And in hym selfe gon farest armys bere" 3060

[Fol 38a]

Greatly en
couraged,

Without delay he
crosses over the
river to the field

and goes in
wherever he sees
most peril

He overthrowns
two knights

Sir Kay Sir
Sagramors Sir
Greasoun, Sir
Ywan Sir Bran
dells and Ga
hers all six in a
race spur across
the field with
stretched spears

and 100 knights
after them

[T]he knyght that haith Rememburit in his thoclt
 The qwenys chargis, & how sche hym besocht, 3064
 Curag can enrefsing to his hart,
 His curser lap, and gan onon to sturt,
 And he the swaris haith reqwyrit so,
 That tha with hym one to the feld wald go 3068

Than goith he one, withouten mor abaid,
 And our the reual to the feld he raid,
 Don goith his spere onone In to the Reit,
 And in he goith, withouten mor areft,
 Thar as he saw most perell and most dred
 In al the feld, and most of help¹ had ned,
 Whar sembllyt was the first-conquest king
 With mony o knyght that was in his leding 3072

The first he met, doune goith boith horf & man,
 The spere was holl, and to the next he Raif
 That helpit hym his hawbrek nor his scheld,
 Bot through and through haith perfit in the feld 3080

Sir kay, the wch harth thus encontyr fen,
 His horf he strekith our the larg gren,
 And in sygramors ek the defyrand,
 With fir grefown cummyth at yar honde,
 Son of the duk, and alfua fir ywan
 The baftart, and fir brandellis onan,
 And gaherf, wch that broyir was
 To gawan, thir sex in a Raif 3088

Deluerly com prekand our the feldas
 With spers ftraucht, and couerit with thar scheldis,
 Sum for love, sum honor to purchef,
 And after them one hundred knyghtis was, 3092

¹ MS "held"

- In famyne will, thar manhed to affay
 On his v falowis clepit than *fir* kay,
 And faith them, " *firis*, thar has þonder ben
 A courſ that neuer-more farar was fen
- 3096
- Sir Kay exhorts
them
- Maid be o knyght, and we ar cummyn ilkon
 Only ws one [his] worschip to dispone,
 And neuer we in al our dais mycht
 Have bet axampil than iſſith ws zone knyght
- 3100
- Of well doing , and her I hecht for me
 Ner hymē al day, if that I may, to bee,
 And folow hymē at al [my] mycht I fall,
 Bot deth or vthir adwentur me fall
- 3104
- With that thir sex, al in one aſſent,
 With freſch curag In to the feld Is went
 The blak knyctas ſpere in pecis goſe,
- [Fol 48 b]
- Frome o fqwyar oñe vthir haith he toñe,
 And to the feld onone he goith ful rycht,
 Thir sex with hymē ay holdith at *yar* mycht
 And than bygan his wonderis in the feld ,
- 3108
- With a ſecond
ſpear the black
knight ſeeks the
field closely fol-
lowed by the ſix
- Thar was no helme, no hawbryk, nore no ſcheld,
- 3112
- Nor yhit no knyght ſo hardy, ferſ, nore ſtout,
 No þat no maner armour mycht halde owt
 His ftrength, nore was of powar to withſtond ,
- 3116
- So mych of armys dyde he with his honde,
- Every wight
wonders at his
deeds
- That euery wight ferleit of *his* deid,
 And al his fois ſtondith ful of dreid
 So beſely he can his tyme diſpend,
- 3120
- That of the ſperis wiſh *fir* gawan fend,
- He uses up all
Gawane's ſpears
- Holl of them all thar was not lewit oñe ,
 Throw wiſh but mercy to the deyht is gon
 Ful many o knyght, and many o weriour,
 That couth fuſten ful hardely o ſtour
- 3124
- Two horses of his
are killed and he
fights on foot
- And of his horſ ſupprisit ded ar two,
 One of his awn, of gawanis one alſo,
 And he one fut was fechtand one the gren,
 When that *fir* kay haith with his falowis ſen ,
- 3128

The squene brings
him a fresh horse,

The ffwyai with his horſ than to hym brocht ,
Magre his fois he to his courſeir focht

he leaps into the
saddle without
stirrups

Dehuerly, as of o mychty hart,
Without ſteropis in to his ſadill ftart, 3132
That euery wycht beholding mervell has

Sir Kay asks who
he is,

Of his ftrength and deliuſ befynes
Sir kay, feing his horſ, and how that thaſ
War cled in to ſir gawanis aray, 3136
Afkith at the fquyar if he knewith

but the square
cannot tell

What that he was, this knycht & he hym ſchewith
He wiſt no thing quhat that he was, nore hee
Befor that day hymne neuer ſaw with Ee 3140
Than afkith he, how and one quhat wyſ
On gawanis horſ makith hymne ſich ſeruice ?
The ffwy[ar] faſth, "forſuth y wot no more ,
My lord ws bad, I not the crwſ quhaifoire" 3144

The black knight
returns to the
field

The blak knycht, horſit, to the feld can ſow
Als freſch as he was in the morow new ,

The ſix comrades
follow him

The ſex falowis folowit hymne ilkone,
And al in front on to the feld ar goſi , 3148
Rycht freſchly one thar ennemys thaſ ſoght,
And many o fair poynſ of armys vroght

[Fol 39a]

Malangin's host
is diſcomfited by
king Ydras and
retreats to join
the ſecond line
commanded by
the Conqueſt-
king

[I]han hapnyt to king malangins oft
By ydras king diſcomfit was, & loſt, 3152
And fled, and to the conqueſt-king ar goſe,
Thar boith the batellis affembliſt In to one ,

King malengynis in to his hart was wo ,
For of hymne-ſelf no better knycht mycht go , 3156
Thar xl thouſand war thaſ for xv
Than mycht the feld rycht perellus be fen
Of armyt knychtis gaping one the ground ,
Sum deith, and fum with mony a grewous wond , 3160
For arthuriſ knychtis, that manly war and gud,
Suppos that vthir was o multitudine ,
Refauſt tham well at the ſperis end ,
But one ſuch wyſ thaſ may not lang defend 3164

- | | | |
|--|------|---|
| The blak knyght saw the danger of the feld,
And al his doings knowith quho beheld,
And ek remembrith in to his entent
Of the meifag that sche haith to hyme fent | 3168 | The black knight
knowing who is
beholding him, |
| Than curag, strentch enrefsing with manhed,
Ful lyk o knyght one to the feld he raid,
Thinking to do his ladice love to have,
Or than his deth befor her to refave | 3172 | thinks to have
his lady's love or
die before her |
| Thar he begynyth in his feis curag
Of armys, as o lyoune in his rag,
Than merwell was his doing to behold,
Thar was no knyght so stong, nor yhit so bold, | 3176 | |
| That in the feld befor his fuerd he met,
Nor he so hard his strok apone hym flet,
That ded or wondit to the erth he focht,
For thar was not bot wonderis that he wrocht | 3180 | He works no
thing but won-
ders |
| And magre of his fois euerilkone,
In to the feld oft tymys hym aloñ
Through and through he passith to & fro,
For in the ward ¹ it was the maner tho | 3184 | and often passes
alone through
the field |
| That non o knyght shuld be the brydill tak
Hyme to oreft, nore cum behynd his bak,
Nor mo than on at onys one o knyght
Shuld strik, for that tyme worship stud fo ryght | 3188 | |
| þhit was the feld ryght perellus and stong
Till arthurs folk, fet thai contenyt longe,
Bot in sich wÿf this blak knyght can conten,
That thai, the wîch that hath his manhed fēn, | 3192 | [Fol 395.]
He fights in such
wise as to en-
courage all who
see his deeds |
| Sich hardyment haith takyne In his ded,
Them thocht thai had no maner cauf of dred,
Als long as he myght owthir ryd or go,
At euery ned he them recomfort fo | 3196 | |
| Sir Kay haith with his falowis al the day
Folowit hym al that he can or may, | | Sir Kay and his
fellows follow
him all day |

¹ Another spelling of *masld*, i.e. world, which occurs in the fuller form in 1.3212

- And wondir well thaī have in armys p̄ewit,
And with thar manhed oft thar folk relewit , 3200
Bot well thaī faucht in diuer̄ placis fere,
With multitud yar folk confusit were,
But at last they
are nearly ill
overpowered by
numbers
Sir Kay sends Ga
wane squire with
a message to Sir
Harwy that he
ought not to
suffer the best
knight that ever
bore arms to be
surprised
That long in sich wyf mycht thaī noct̄ conteñ
Sir kay, that hath fer gawans qfquyars sen, 3204
He clepit hym, and haith hym prayt so,
That to fer harwy the rewell wl he go,
And say to hym, " ws think hymē ewil awysfit ,
For her throuch hymē he suffeit be suppr̄int 3208
The beſt knyght that euē armys bur ,
And if it fo beſell of adwentur,
In his defalt, that he be ded or lamyt,
This warld fal have hymē vtraly defamyt 3212
And her ar of the round table alfo
A falouſchip, that fall in well and wo
Abid with hymē, and furth for to endur
Of lyf or deth, this day, thar adwentur , 3216
And if fo fal discumfyt at thaī bee,
The king may fay that wonder ewill haith he
Contentit hymē, and kepit his honore,
Thus for to tyne of chevalry the flour ! " 3220
The fqwyar hard, and furth his way Raid,
In termys schort he al his mefag faid
Sir harwy faith, " y wytneſ god, that I
Neuer in my days comytit tratory, 3224
And if I now begyne In to myne eld,
In ewill tyme fyſit com I to this feld ,
Bot, if god will, I fal me fon diſcharg
Say to fer kay, I fal not ber the charg,
He fal no mater have me to rapref,
I fal amend this mys if that I lef "
The fqwyar went and tellit to fer kay ,
Sir Harwy comes
to support them
A nd fer harwy, in al the haſt he may,
A ffemblyt hath his oſtas, & onoñ
In gret defyre on the feld is gon
Sir Harwy says
that Sir Kay shall
have no cause to
reprove him
[Fol 40 a]

- Before his folk, and haldith furth his way ,
Don goith his sper, and ewyne before fir kay 3236
So hard o knyght he strykith in his ten
That horȝ and he lay boith apone the gren
Sir gawan saw the counter that he maad,
And leuch for al the farues that he had 3240
That day fir harwy prewyt in the feld
Of armys more than longith to his eld,
For he was more than fyfty yher of ag,
Set he was ferȝ and ȝong in his cuiag ,
And fro that he assemblyt his bataill
Doune goith the folk of galotis al haill ,
For to withfond thair war of no poware,
And yhit of folk x thousand mo theri vare 3244
K yng valydone, that fauch on fuch o wyȝ
His falowis dangerit with thair ennemys,
Wȝth al his folk, being freȝ and new,
Goith to the feld onon, them to ieskew ,
Thar was the feld rycht perellus aȝane,
Of arthuris folk ful many on var flan 3252
B ot angus, quihich that lykith not to bid,
And saw the perell one the tother fid,
His sted he strok, and wȝth his oft is gon
Whar was most ned, and thar the feld has ton
K yng clamedyus makith non abaid,
Bot with his oft one to the fid he raid 3256
A nd ywons king, that haith his cummyn fen,
Encounterit hym in myddis of the greñ.
The aucht batells assemblyt one this wiȝ ,
On ather half the clamore and the cryn
Was lametale and petws for til her,
Of knyctis wicch in diuerȝ placis fere
Wondit war, and fallyng to and fro,
ȝhit galoytis folk war xx thousand mo 3260
T he blak knyght than on to hym-self he said
“Remembur the, how yhow haith ben araid,
- and proves him
self a better war
rior than might
have been ex
pected of one so
old
- Galoit's folk are
beaten
- King valydone
comes to support
them
- Angus comes to
aid Arthur's men
- Clamedyus comes
to aid Galoit's
men
- Ywons encoun
ters Clamedyus
- Great clamour
and lamentable
cries on either
side
- The black knight
bids himself re
member love's
power over him ,

Ay fen ye hour that yow was makid knycht,
With love, azane quhois powar & whois mycht 3272
Yow haith no strent, yow may It not endur,
Noiȝ hit non vthir eithly creatur ,

and that only his
lady's mercy or
his life's end can
amend him

And bot two thingis ar the to amend,
Thi ladice mercy, or thi lyvys end 3276

[Fol 40 b]

And well yhow wot that on to hir prefens,
Til hir eftat, nor til hir excellens,
Thi febilnes̄ neuermore is able
For to attan, sche is fo honorable 3280

He counsels him
self to strive for
her thanks,

And fen no way yow may fo hie extend,
My verray confell is, that yow pretend
This day, (fen yow becummyne ait hir knycht
Of hir comand, and fechtit in hir fycht) 3284

and to be
ashamed of every
point of cow
ardise

And well yow schaw, fen yow may do no mor,
That of resone sche fal the thank tharfore ,
Of euery poyn特 of cowardy yow scham,
And in tl armys purches̄ the sum nam " 3288

Swift as a cross
bow bolt he seeks
the field

With that of love in to o new desfi
His spere he straucht, and fwift as any wyre
With al his foris̄ the neſt feld he fought,
His ful strent in armys thar he vroght, 3292

His sword carves
the head from
some and cuts
the arms of others
in twain

In to the feld rusching to and fro,
Doun goith the man, doun goith the horis̄ also ,
Sum throw the scheld is perfit to the hart,
Sum throw the hed, he may It not astart 3296

When his foes
see him they
leave the place
for dread of death

His bludry fuerd he dreuch, that carwit fo
Fro sum the hed, and sum the arm in two ,
Sum in the feld fellit is in fwoñ,
Thiow sum his fuerd goith to the fadill doun 3300

His fois waren abasif of his dedis,
His mortell strok so gretly for to dred Is ,

Whar thai hyme saw, within a lytall space,
For dreid of ded, thai levynge hym the place, 3304
That many o strok ful oft he haith forlorñ ,
The spedys horis̄ away the knycht hath borin

- | | |
|------|--|
| 3308 | His knyghtly
deeds assure his
fellows |
| 3312 | |
| 3316 | It was pitiful to
see the knyght's
gaping upon the
green |
| | [Fol 41 a] |
| 3320 | Galot asks his
men why they
die |
| 3324 | A knight replies
that whoever
likes him go and
see marvels |
| | |
| 3328 | Gallot asks, what
marvels and the
knight tells him
there is a knight
who vanquishes
all |
| | |
| 3332 | |
| | who fares as a
lion or a bear |
| 3336 | to whom the red
knight bears no
comparison |
| 3340 | |

¹ MS "Whill"

Galiot says I e will go and see	Quod galiot, "in nome of god and we Al, be tymc, the futhfaſtneſſ fal see "	
Galiot is armed rallies the flyers and encourages his men	[T]han he in armys that he had is gon, And to the feld with hymē aȝane hath ton Al the fleas, and foundyne [in] ¹ fich aray His folk, that ner discumfyt al war thay, Bot quhen thau saw cummyne our the plan Thar lord, thau tuk fich hardement aȝan,	3344
They shout their war cries	That thar effenzeis lowd thau gon to cry He chargit tham to go, that ware hymē by, Stiaucht to the feld, with al thar holl forſ , And thau, the wiche that sparit not the horſ , All redy war to fillyng his command, And freſchly went, w/þowten more demand	3348
All think a new host is coming	Throw qwich thar folk recouer/yt haith thau place, For al the feld prefwmyt that thar was	3356
Arthur's folk de termine rather to die than fly	O new oft, one fuch o wyſ that foght, Whar arthuriſ folk had paſſith al to nocht, Ne war that thau the better war ilkoñe, And at thau can them v̄taly diſpone	3352
[Fol 41b]	Rathar to dee than flee, in thar entent, And of the blak knyght haith fich hardyment , For at al perell, al harmys, and myſchef, In tyme of ned he can tham al ralef	3360
The black knight is borne to the ground	[T]har was the batell dangerus & ſtrong, Gret was the pres, bath perellus & throng , The blak knyght is born on to the ground, His horſ hymē falyth, that fellith dethis wound	3368
The six comrades go to the earth	The vi falowis, that falowit hymē al day, Sich was the pref, that to the erth go thay , And thar in myd among his ennemys He was about encloſit one fich wyſ	3372
None know where he is	That quhare he was non of [his] falowis knew, Nor mycht nocht cum to help hymē, nore reikew	

¹ The sense, but not the metre, requires "in"

- And thus among his ennemys allon
 His nakid fuerd out of his hond haith ton , 3376 He defends him
 And thar he p^{re}ewit his weittew & his strent , self with his
 Foi thar was none w^tin the fuedis lenth
 That came, bot he goith to confusione
 Thar was no helme, thar was no habirioune,
 That may refist his fuerd, he smytith so , 3380 No helm nor ha
 One euer fyd he helpith to and fro,
 That al about the compas thair mycht ken ,
 The ded hor^s lyth virflynge with the men 3384
 Thair hyme affalzeing both w^th scheld & spere,
 And he azane , as at the stok the bere
 Snybbith the hardy hounds that ar ken,
 So farith he , for neuer mycht be sen 3388
 He fares like a
 bear at the stake
 that snubs the
 hardy hounds
 His fuerd to refit, that in the gret rout
 He rowmyth all the compas hyme about
 [A]nd galiot, beholding his manhed,
 Within his self wonderith of his ded , 3392 Galiot wonders at
 How that the body only of o knyght
 Haith sich o strent, haith sich affere & mycht ,
 Than said he thus, " I wald not that throw me,
 Or for my cau^s, that such o knyght fuld dee , 3396 and says that
 To conquer all this world that is so larg "
 His hor^s than can he w^th his spuris charg,
 A gret trunfioune In to his hond hath ton ,
 And in the thikeyt of the pie^s is goⁿ, 3400
 And al his folk chargit he to se^f
 At his command thair levynge al the pref ,
 And quhen he had departit all the rout , He charges all his
 He said, " fir knyght, havith now no dout "
 Wich anwerit, " I have no cau^s to dred "
 " 3is," quod he, " fa euer god me sped , 3404
 Bot apone fut quhill ze ar fechtand here,
 And yhow defendith apone sich manere , [Fol. 42 a]
 So hardely, and ek fo lyk o knyght,
 I fal my self w^th al my holl mycht 3408
 and assures the
 black knight that
 he will himself
 warrant him from
 all harm

	Be yhour defens, and varand fra al harmys , Bot had yhe left of worschip In til armys,	3412
	What I have don I wold apone no wy ^þ , Bot sen yhe ar of knyghted fo to prys , þe fal ¹ no maner caus have for to dred	
He offers him as many horses as he needs and proposes that they shall never again part	And fet yhour hor ^þ be falit at this ned , Difpleß yhow not, for quhy þe fal not want Als many as yhow lykith for to hawnt , And I my-self, I fal yhowr fqwyar bee , And, if god will, neuer more fal wee	3416 3420
He lights from his horse and gives him to Lancelot who thanks him	Depart," with that, anon he can to lycht Doune frome his hor ^þ , and gaf hym to y ^e knycht The lord he thonkit, and the hor ^þ hath ton , And als so fresh one to the feld is gon , As at no ftroks he that day had ben	3424
Gahot returns to his host, and chooses a band of 10 000 men	His falowis glad, one hor ^þ that hath hym fen , To galiot one vthir hor ^þ thai broght , And he goith one, and frome the feld he focht , And to the plan quhar that his oft ^s were , And brandymagus chargit he to stere	3428
The trumpets clarions, horns, and bugles are sounded.	Efter hym, wtzin a lyttill space , And x thoufand he takyne wtih hym ha ^þ , Toward the feld onon he can to Rid , And chargit them befor ye oft to byd Wp goith the trumpetis, and the claryownis , Hornys, bugillis blawing furth thar fownis , That al the cuntry resounit hath about , Than arthurius folk var in dispar & dout , That hard the noys, and saw the multitud	3432 3436
Arthur's folk despair	Of fresh folk, thai cam as thai war wod [B]ot he that was wtlowten any dred , In fabill cled, and saw the gret ned , Asemblyt al his falowis, and arrayd , And thus to them in manly termes said	3440 3444
The sable knight, still fearless , harangues his men, saying ,		

¹ MS "falt"

- "What that *ze* ar I knew not yhour eftat,
 Bot of manhed and worship, well I wat,
 Out through this wauld yhe aw to be *commendit*,
 This day *ze* have so knychtly yhow defendant 3448
 And now yhe fee how that, *a*ganis the *nycht*,
 Yhour ennemys pretendit with thar myght
 Of multitud, and with thar new oft,
 And with thar bughs and thar wyndis boſt 3452
Fieschly cummyng In to fiche aray,
 To ifyne yhow one owtrag¹ or affray
 And now almost cummyne Is the *nycht*,
 Quahaifor yhour strenth, yhour curag, & yhour mycht
 Yhe occupye in to so manly *wys*,
 That the worship of knychthed & emprys
 That yhe have wonyng, and ye *get* renown
 Be not yloft, be not ylaid doun
 For one hour the sufferyng of diftres,
 Gret harm It war yhe tyme the hie encies
 Of vorſhip, feruit al this day before
 And to yhow al my confell is, tharfore,
 With manly curag, but radour, yhe pretend
 To met them fcharply at the speris end,
 So that thei feil the cold speris poynt
 Out-throw thar scheldis, in thar harts poynt
 So fal thaſ fynd we an no-thing affrayt,
 Whar through we fall the well leſ be affayt
 If that we met them fcharply in the berd,
 The formeſt fal mak al the laif afferd."
 And with o woyſ thaſ cry al, "fir knycht,
 Apone yhour manhed, and yhour gret mycht,
 We fal abid, for no man thall eschef
 Frome yhow this day, his manhed for to pref"
 And to his oft the lord fir yvane faid,
 "Yhe comfort yow, yhe be no-thing affrayd,
- [fol 42 b]
- "I know not who
 ye are but I know
 that ye ought to
 be commended.
- Ye see how your
 enemies as night
 approaches are
 striving to give
 you an outrage
 or a frught.
- Employ then
 your courage so
 that the honour
 ye have won be
 not again lost
- Resolve then to
 meet them
 sharply without
 fear so that they
 may feel the cold
 spear in their
 hearts
- Perhaps then the
 foremost will
 make the rest
 afraid
- They promise to
 stand firm
- Sir Yvan also
 bids his men be
 comforted, for
 that they see all

¹ MS "owtray" See Glossary

the strength of their enemies	Ws ned no more to dreding of supprif ³ , We fe the ftrength of al our ennemys "	3480
Sir Gawane, how ever knew better	Thus he said, for he wend thaï var no mo, Bot fir gawan knew well It vas not fo , For al the oftas mycht he fe al day, And the gret hoift he saw quhar yat it lay	3484
Galiot also ex horts his men	[A]nd galiot he can his folk exort, Befeching them to be of good comfort,	And sich enconter

[The rest is wanting]

N O T E S.

[It may be observed, once for all, that the expression *in to* repeatedly occurs where we should simply use *in*, and *one to* is in like manner put for *unto*. The ending *-ith* (for *-ed*) is frequent in the past tense, and *-it* (also for *ed*) in the past participle, though this distinction is not always observed. A still more noticeable ending is *ing* (for *-en*) in the infinitive. Observe further that the letters *v*, *u*, and *w* are perfectly convertible, and used quite indiscriminately, so that *wpone* means *upon*, *wihir* means *whither*, i.e., *other* *our* is put for *over*, *vounde* signifies *wound*, etc.]

Page 1, line 1 *The soft morow* This nominative case has no verb. A similar construction occurs in the first lines of Books II and III. 4 *Uprisith—his hot coursse*, Upriseth in his hot course, *charre*, chariot 6 *sent*, sendeth, so also *stant*, standeth, 1 326 8 *valkyne*, waken 10 *gyrss*, grass 11 *assay*, assault 13 *wox*, voice 17 *frome I can*, from the time that I did 18 *It deuert me*, it availed me Jamieson gives “*Dow*, 1 to be able, A S *dugan* (*valere*), to be able 2 to avail, Teut *doogen*”

P 2, 1 23 *hewy zerys*, heavy years 24 “Until that Phoebus had thrice gone through his full circuits” (lit spheres) See the peculiar use of “pas” in other places 26 “So, by such a manner, was my lot fated,” see 1 41 28 *carving can*, did cut 30 *be the monow*, by the morn 36 *newlyngys*, newly, anew 43 *walkirth*, walked 50 *I clede*, y-clad, clad Ch has *clede* 54 “No one within thought he could be seen by any wight outside”

P 3, 1 56 *clos it*, enclose it, the MS has *closit* 57 *alpheſt* This reading of the MS is an error for *alceſt* See Chaucer, Prologue to Legend of good women, 1 511

“The grete goodnesse of the quene Alceſte,
That turned was into a dayesye,”

Alceſte being the contracted form of Alceſtis 59 *Wncloſing gane*, did uncloſe 60 “The bright sun had illumined the spray, and

had updrawn (upwarped) into the lusty air the night's soft (sober) and moist showers , and had made the morning soft, pleasant, and fair" With this difficult passage we should compare l 2477
 66 *Quhill, until 67 till ony ncht, to any wight 69 Bot glad ness tul the thochtful, euer mo, etc*, "But, as for gladness to the melancholy man, evermore the more he seeth of it, the more wo he hath" 73 *represent, represented* (accented on the second syllable)
 74 *Al day gan be sor, etc*, "All the day, my spirit began to dwell in torment, through sorrow of thought," *be sor, by sorrow* (A S *sorh*) 77 *Ore sleep, or how I wot, "Or sleep, ere I knew how"*
 83 *A licht, alighted 84 levis in to were, lvest in doubt*

P 4, l 91 *be morow, by morrow, at early morn 99 set, although 103 wel accordunge, very fitting 105 long ore he be sonde, (It is) long ere he be sound 108 serth, for to conseil, saith, that as for concealing or shewing, etc 109 althu-best, lit best of all, see Chaucer's use of alderfist, alderlast*

P 5, l 127 *lat be thy nyss dispare, let be thy nice (foolsh) despair 128 erith, earth 134 schall hym hating, shall hate him* The termination -ing is here the sign of the infinitive mood after the verb *shall* 140 *Set, although 146 tak one hand and mak, undertake and compose, trety, treatise, vnhouth, unknown, new 151 beleve, believe will please thy lady 160 yis, thus*

P 6, l 161 *trought, truth 163 dischar ge, release 170 spur, sphere 171 "At command of a wise (god from) whose vision," etc We sometimes find in old English the adjective "a wise" used absolutely for "a wise man" See "Le Morte Arthur," ed F J Furnivall, l 3318 175 *tynt, lost 177 be this worldas fame* Here again, as in many other passages, "be" expresses with relation to, as regards 185 *yarm, them 191 demande, demur**

P 7, l 198 *Quhill, until 200 conten, treat, lit contain 202 Lancelot is here called the son of Ban, king of Albanak, so again in l 1447 204 redis, read 214 "I will not waste my efforts thereupon" 219 *unwyst, unwist, unknown 225 nome, name 226 Iwondit to the stak, very deeply wounded, but there is no doubt about the origin of the phrase See Glossary 228 astart, get rid of it, escape it**

P 8, l 240 *dedenyt to aras, deigned to pluck out 244 hurtare, hurter 245 Iwond, wounded 248 ful wrcht, full nimble 251 of quhome, by whom 253 send, sent 257 pasing vassolag, surpassing prowess 260 "Passed down into the fell caves" 264 tane, taken 266 cure, care*

P 9, l 267 *gant be mard, caused to be made 271 auoue, vow 275 in to that gret Revare, in that great river 284 o gret confusione of pupil and knyghtis, al enarmyt, a great medley of people and knights, all fully armed Stevenson actually reads unaemyt! 294 I wil report, both here and in l 320 we should almost expect to find "I nil report," i.e I will not tell It must mean, "I will*

tell you why I omit to mention these things" Compare lines 266, 320 297 *thing, think*

P 10, l 305 *veris, wars* 306 *be the wars, by the ways* 307 *Tuez, betwixt, acoide, agreement* 314 *mot, must* 316 *stek,* concluded 319 *most compilour, very great composer* 320 "As to whose name I will only say, that it is unfit," etc 326 *stant,* standeth 328 *youngh, rung* 330 *beith, shall be, observe the future sense of birth in this place* 331 *suet, sweet* 332 "His soul in bliss preserved be on that account" 334 *and this endit* Whether *endit* here refers to *inditing* or *ending* is perhaps doubtful

NOTES TO BOOK I

P 11, l 336 If by *anyert* is here meant the *sign*, not the *constellation* of Aries, the day referred to is April 1 or 2, according to Chaucer's "Astrolabie" 338 *bewis, boughs* 340 *makyne gone,* did make 341 *in ther chere,* after their fashion (For *chere*, see Glossary) 345 *aerding to,* belonging to 351 *Anoit,* annoyed 352 *For why,* wherefore, so also *for-thi,* therefore 354 *can,* began 355 *sende,* sent 358 *heryng,* hear (infin mood) In the next line it occurs as a present participle 362 *to pas hym,* to go, depart 364 *met,* to dream of, *aperans,* an appearance, apparition P 12, l 365 *hole,* hair 375 *vombe, womb,* hence bowels 377 *sterf,* started 384 *gert,* caused 390 *trast,* trust 397 *demande,* demur, delay 398 *at,* that

P 13, l 407 *whill,* until 408 *the, they* 410 *to viting,* to know 412 *shauyth al hall,* sheweth all whole 414 *chessth,* chooseth 422 *shire, sir* 424 *fore to awysing,* in order to take counsel 432 All this about *astronomy* (i e astrology) should be compared with Gower, Conf Amantis, lib vii, ed Pauli, vol 3, pp 133, 134 Arachell, Nembrote, Moises, Hermes are there mentioned as astrologers 433 The MS has "set" (not with a long s) Mr Stevenson has "fet," which would seem right

P 14, l 435 *nembrot,* Nimrod, see *Genesis and Exodus* (E E T S), l 659 436 *herynes,* miswritten for *herymes,* i e Hermes 439 "The which they found were wondrously evil set" 440 *his swauen met,* dreamed his dream 443 *waryng in to weve,* were in doubt 444 *danger,* power to punish, compare Shakspere's use of the word 457 *but delay,* without delay 459 *stondith heavy cherrith,* stood heavy-cheered, was sad in his demeanour 465 *fun-dyng,* found 466 *depend to,* depend

P 15, l 475 *tone,* taken 478 tell out, speak 487 *preseruith It allan,* is preserved alone 499 *affy in-tyll,* rely upon 500 *fulye,* fail 504 *there clergy,* their science

P 16, l 519 "Through the watery lion, who is also faithful,

and through the leech and eke the water also, and through the counsel of the flower" It is very possible this passage is partly corrupt, l 520 should certainly be (as may be seen from lines 2010, 2056), "And throuch the leich withouten medysyne"

The meanings of hon, leech, and flower are fully explained, however, in lines 2013-2120 524 *weyne*, vain 527 *passid nat his thought*, left not his thoughts 531 *rachis*, braches, dogs 533 *grewhundis*, grayhounds 536 This purely conjectural line is merely inserted to carry on the sense It is imitated from line 3293 In the next line we should read "grewhundis," rather than "giewhund" 538 *Befor ther hedis*, before their heads

P 17, l 545 "All armed, as was then the fashion" 546 *salust*, saluted 548 *hend*, known 549 *leuith*, liveth 552 The rime requires "land," as in l 638 553 *yald hyme ou*, yield him over 554 *if tribut*, give tribute 566 *recist*, resist, *mone bee*, must be 568 *be*, by 569 *day moneth day*, eie this day month, comp l 1162

P 18, l 577 *fairehd*, fair-hood, beauty 587 *magre myne entent*, in spite of my intention 591 *nome*, took 593 *Inquere at*, inquire of 596 *wes*, was 599 *vase*, rose 605 *accordith*, agree thereto 606 *recordith*, belongeth 607 *visare*, wisei

P 19, l 621 *This spek I lest*, thus I list to speak 622 *varnit*, warned 626 "Though the season of the year was contrary" 627 *atte*, at the 629 *the ilk*, that (Scotch *thilk*) 632 *Melyhalt*, the name both of a hill, and of the town built upon it 636 *afay*, terror 642 *unconquest*, unconquered 643 *cwe*, care

P 20, l 649 *nemmyt*, named 652 *were*, war 654 *or than* to morn, earlier than to morrow 660 *our few*, over few 677 *northest*, north-east

P 21, l 686 *fechters*, fighters 688 *holde*, held 691 *presone*, prison 697 *perte*, pity 699 The metre of Lancelot's lament is that of Chaucer's "Cuckoo and Nightingale," and was very possibly copied from it *Quhat haue y gilt*, what crime have I committed 702 *ago*, gone 703 *nat*, naught, *me gland*, gladden me 706 *til haue*, to have 709 *Sen thelde tyme*, since that time

P 22, l 718 *of remed*, for a remedy 719 *sesith*, ceaseth 723 *with this lady*, by this lady 728 *lansere*, leisure 731 *duuerss wares sere*, divers several ways 733 *bur*, bore 735 *cher*, car 740 *dout*, to fear 745 *but were*, without doubt This expression often occurs

P 23, l 751 *few menye*, small company, an oddly sounding expression to modern ears 753 *cold*, called 754 *hot*, hight, was named 755 *but in his cumpny*, unless he had with him 757 *He earth*, the speaker is the captain of the hundred knights, called in l 806 *Malegnis* 768 *als fell*, just as many 777 *hard*, heard 781 *elepit*, called

P 24, l 793, *as he wel couth*, as he well knew how 796 *sen*, seen 800 *sen*, since 806 *was hot*, was hight, was named 809 *In myde the borde and festun in the stell*, In the midst they encounter, and fastened in the steel See l 850 812 *Rout*, company 815 *ferde*, fourth 817 *sauch thar latter batell steir*, saw their last division stir

P 25, l 820 *gane his mortall fell* A word seems here omitted, if after *mortall* we insert *striokis*, the sense will be, "His enemies began his mortall strokes to feel" 825 *worth*, worthy It would improve the metre to read *worthy* (l 875) 828 *In to were*, in war, in the strife 829 *hyme bure*, bore himself 839 *to for*, heretofore 841 *Atour*, i e *at over*, across 842 *assall*, assault The rime shews we should read *assall*, as in l 855 849 *socht atour*, made their way across The use of *seke* in Early English is curious

P 26, l 861 *setith his payn vpone*, devotes his endeavours to 868 *al to herwith*, wholly cutteth in pieces 880 *dirk*, dark 883 *tan and slan*, taken and slain

P 27, l 895 It frequently occurs in the MS that a space is left at the beginning of a line, and the first letter of the line is omitted It is evident that the intention was that the first letter should be illuminated, and that this, after all, was not done Here, for instance, the T is omitted, as indicated by the square brackets So also in l 1083, etc 897 *pasing home*, go home 899 *was vent*, had gone 905 *dulay*, delay So also *duclar* for *declare* 907 *comyne*, came 908 *ill paide*, displeased 909 *homly*, humbly Stevenson reads *hourly*, but this is wrong, see l 914 911 *carful*, full of care, unhappy 912 *withouten were*, without doubt 914 *lawly*, lowly 918 *wright*, with (unusual, and perhaps wrong)

P 28, l 924 *lefe*, live 929 *eft*, after 933 *thar longith*, there belongeth 943 *I was for til excuss*, I had some excuse 944 "Because I did behove (to do it), out of very need" 946 *lefe it but*, leave it without 953 *ma*, make 954 *ga*, go 955 *of new*, anew 958 *But if that deth or other lat certan*, "Except it be owing to death or other sure hindrance"

P 29, l 960 *be hold*, be held MS *behold* Stevenson suggested the alteration, which is certainly correct 961 *withthy*, on the condition that 965 *promyt*, promise, *als fast as*, as soon as 973 *ferd*, fourth 982 "Where we shall decide the end of this war"

P 30, l 997 *cng*, cage, prison 999 *amen*, pleasant 1000 *vodis*, woods 1004 *lust*, pleasure (Ch) But the line is obscure, unless we read "diversitee" 1009 "His spirit started (owing to the) love (which) anon hath caught him," etc 1012 *at*, that 1014 "(As to) whom they know not at all" 1019 *sen at*, since that 1022 *the dewod*, devoid thee 1024 *and*, if 1026 *be ony mayne*, by any mean

P 31, l 1027 *y red*, I advise 1035 *To warnnyng*, to warn

1040 *our the furdis*, over the fords 1044 *oyer* So in MS, the *y* representing the old *th* (þ), other 1046 *hufyng*, halting 1050 *worschip*, honour "It were more expedient to maintain your honour" 1058 *wonk*, winked 1062 *vare*, aware

P 32, l 1064 The meaning of "ferst-conquest" is "first-conquered" (*conquest* being Old Fr for conquered) It is explained in l 1547 as having been a title given to the king whom Galot first subdued 1067 *ferss*, fierce 1070 *suppos*, although 1073 *he*, viz the shrew 1077 The MS has "fched." 1080 *ymen*, I mean 1095 *tas*, takes

P 33, l 1109 *Galyo.*, put for *Galotes*, the genitive case ending being often omitted, after a proper name especially 1110 *previt*, proved, tried 1129 *trast*, trust 1131 *that every theng hath cure*, that (of) everything hath care

P 34, l 1135 "Aye from the time that the sun began to light the world's face, until he was gone" 1137 *o fois*, perforce 1141 *tans*, takes 1142 *hecht*, promised 1151 *failzeis*, fail 1154 *fet*, fetched 1156 *stant*, standeth 1162 *resput*, respite 1166 *very knychtis passing*, weary knights go

P 35, l 1170 *till speire*, to inquire 1177 *ne wor his worschip*, had it not been for his valour 1187 *gwheyar*, whether 1191—4 "And fond," etc These four lines are now for the first time printed They were omitted by Stevenson, evidently by accident 1196 *Per dee* Fr *par Dieu* an oath common in old ballads, generally in the form *pardy* 1197 *vsyt*, used 1198 "I advise that we go unto his arms" (armour) 1203 *haill*, whole

P 36, l 1207 *abwysyt*, abused, i.e made an ill use of 1208 *vsyt*, used 1209 *suppos the best that lewis*, even though (it were) the best that lives 1217 *on sleep*, asleep The prefix *a-* in English is due to the Saxon *on* 1221 *al to-hurt*, etc See note in Glossary on the word *To-kerwith* 1225 *sauich*, saw, *rewit*, rued, pitied 1233 *one syd a lyt*, a little on one side 1236 *owr mekill*, over much

P 37, l 1240 *yarof*, thereof 1241 *ruput*, repute, think 1242 *abbare*, abler, readier 1253 Insert a comma after *thret*, and destroy that after *lowe* The meaning perhaps is, "But what if he be appealed to and threatened, and (meanwhile) his heart be elsewhere set to love" Observe that *and* is often the third or fourth word in the sentence it should begin See l 2833 1258 *ȝhe tyme your low*, you lose your love 1260 *conclusit*, ended 1265 *mokil*, much 1268 *of new*, anew, again 1273 *pan*, pain

NOTES TO BOOK II

P 38, l 1279 *thocht*, anxiety 1284 *apperans*, i.e vision, as in l 364 1295 *aqwynt*, acquainted, Burns uses *acquent* 1297 *com*, coming

P 39, l 1316 "So far out of the way you go in your course" Compare l 1797 1317 "Thy ship, that goeth upon the stormy surge, nigh of thy revels (i.e. because of thy revels) in the gulf it falls, where it is almost drowned in the peil" 1321 "In the wretched dance of wickedness" See the curious uses of the word "daunce" in Chaucer 1323 *the son, thee soon* 1330 *powert, poverty, as the selwyne wat, as thyself knows* 1334 *in to sposag, in wedlock*

P 40, l 1343 The word *drueess* is required to complete the line, cf l 731 1352 *suppreiss*, oppression 1354 *wedwys*, widows 1367 *that ilke*, that same 1369 *sufferith*, makest to suffer

P 41, l 1379 Eccles iv 9, 10 1387 *yow mone, thou must* 1392 *her after leif, hereafter live* 1401 A comma is scarcely needed after "sapiens" It means "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom" Prov ix 10

P 42, l 1409 *to ryng under his pess*, to reign under His peace, by His permission Roquefort gives *pars*, licence, permission 1420 *awour, error* 1427 *leful, lawful*

P 43, l 1447 Ban, king of Albanak, was Lancelot's father See l 202, 1450 1474 The MS has "affit"

P 44, l 1491 *tak the bak apone themself*, turn their backs 1500 *yeurnye*, given 1504 *till*, to, redundant 1506 *stand aw,* stand in awe So also in l 2684 The same expression occurs in *The Bruce*, iii 62, ed Pinkerton, p 42, ed Jamieson, and also in *Havelok*, l 277, where the word *in*, supplied from conjecture, should be struck out

P 45, l 1537 *throw his peple*, by his people 1541 *Thus falith not, etc.,* "Except wise conduct falleth to a king" 1546 It may be right to retain the spelling of the MS—"kinghe," for, though strange and unusual, it occurs again in l 2527

P 46, l 1556 *wende, weened* 1560 *in to his contrare*, against him 1568 *trewnis*, truce 1575 *his powar*, his chief army 1576 *by the yhere*, by the ear, privately 1579 *cold*, called, as in l 753

P 47, l 1597 *home fair*, go home 1608 *And*, redundant in modern English For many of the precepts given by Amytans the author must have been indebted to Gower, or, at any rate, to the author of the *Secreta Secretorum* See Gower, Conf Amantis, ed Pauli, lib vii, vol 3, pp 152—159 And cf Tyrwhitt's note to the Canterbury Tales, l. 16915, and Warton's Hist Eng Poetry

P 48, l 1628 *lest, least, low, law* It requires care to distinguish the two meanings of *low*, viz *love* and *law* 1633 *Iug, judge*

P 49, l 1660 *sar, sorely* 1666 A line omitted The inserted line is purely conjectural

P 50, l 1704 *pupelle*, people 1708 *Inwyus*, envious 1716 *longith, belongeth* 1717 *the lykith*, it likes thee, thou art pleased

P 51, l 1724 *betak til hym*, confer upon him 1730 *essy,*

easy 1736 *for the nonis*, for the occasion See White's *Ormulum*
 1739 *vn to the worthi pun yow if*, unto the worthy poor thou give
 1742 *set nocth of gret substans*, though not of great value 1754
alout, approved of

P 52, 1 1761 *tynuth*, loseth 1763 *atomis*, at once 1771 *re
save*, receive 1773 *with tuo*, also

P 53, 1 1791 *well less*, *al-out*, much less, altogether The
 punctuation hereabouts in Stevenson's edition is very wild 1795
ways, vice, *the wechitness*, thy miserliness 1797 *pass the coursse*,
go thy way 1808 *wrech*, wretch, but here used instead of *miser*
 1812 *viss*, vice 1814 *ben y-knawith*, are known (to be) (?) 1815
dant, daunt 1822 *the ton*, the one

P 54, 1 1832 *bens var*, beware 1834 *colde*, cool 1852 *onyis*,
 once 1855 *whai thow*, through which, wheieby

P 55, 1 1864, *awn*, own The metre requires the more usual
 form *awnin* 1879 *dispolzeth*, despoileth 1881 *For quhi*, where
 fore In this line the MS has "scrifkth"

P 56, 1 1899 *most nedis*, must needs *Ye = the*, i e The
 one, He 1909 *Mot*, might 1917 *in* should be *into*, as elsewhere

P 57, 1 1940 *havith*, hath 1950 *hot*, hight, is called

P 58, 1 1966 *wnepunist*, unpunished 1990 *omend*, amend,
spill, destroy

P 59, 1 2011 *ayne*, are 2012 *duclar*, declare, so also *dulay*
 for delay 2017 *the god werray*, the Very God

P 60, 1 2036 *For quhi*, wherefore 2040 *mad*, made 2041
clergy, science 2062 *be the mycht dewyne*, by the myght divine

P 61, 1 2069 *fan*, fare 2079 *helyth frome the ground*, heals
 from the bottom, i e effectually 2100 *not sessith*, who ceaseth not

P 62, 1 2107 *Ne war*, were it not for, *hastly*, hearty, it
 occurs again four lines below 2135 *yneuch*, enough He means
 he will ask but one question more

P 63, 1 2148 *To passing home*, to go home 2162 *the xxiiij*
day The first *i* in the MS is like a "v" smudged over, we should
 read "xxiiij," as in l 2155 The contraction is to be read *four and
 twentieth*, not *twenty fourth*, so also in l 610

P 64, 1 2190 *hal dure*, hall door 2192 *o worne most for to
 comend*, a journey most to be commended 2194 *louth*, love

P 65, 1 2212 *the fewar eschef thay*, the less they achieve
 2229 "For no adventur will prove so great, that ye shall not
 achieve it" 2241 *whill*, until

P 66, 1 2247 *galot*, so in MS 2265 *grant mercy*, great
 thanks, Fr *grānd merci* 2267 *quiby*, because

P 67, 1 2279 *thithingis*, tidings, probably an error of the
 scribe for *tithingis* Stevenson has *chichengis!* 2284 *al out*, alto-
 gether 2304 *oft syss*, oft-times See Glossary (*Syss*) 2306 *dante*,
danty 2310 *tithandis*, tidings, compare l 2279

P 68, 1 2323 *aw*, owe 2328 *fantesy*, fancy, notion 2334

for no why, for no reason 2337 *mon I fair, must I go* 2338 *our son It warre,* over soon it were 2342 *For quily,* because

P 69, l 2352 *nor has the force of but* 2366 *be ony men,* by any means 2368 *on of tho,* one of them 2375 *chen of low,* chain of love 2376 *and if ȝhe may deren,* an if you may declare

P 70, l 2409 *hartly raquer,* heartily require 2416 *gan ordan,* cause to be provided

P 71, l 2428 *prewaly disspone,* privily dispose 2436 *ellis-quhat,* I suppose this means, "he was on fire elsewhere" 2448 *hamlynnes, homeliness* 2452 *fest thow al the ȝher eliche,* feast through all the year alike

P 72, l 2469 *commend,* commended 2470 *he drynith,* he driveth, pursueth The reading is not *dravnith*, as in Stevenson

NOTES TO BOOK III

P 73, l 2471 This line is too long, and the sense imperfect, but there is no doubt about the reading of the MS 2474 *Avodith,* expels 2475 *doune vals,* falls down, for it is evident that *vals* is an error for *fulis*, the mistake having arisen from confusion with the succeeding line 2480 *cled, clad* 2487 *byggoun,* begun In the next line Stevenson has *sown,* but the true reading is *Rown, run,* as in l 2820 2492 *barnag, baronage, nobility*

P 74, l 2522 *but dulay, without delay, the, they* 2524 *thar com,* their coming 2530 *in the dogre,* in its (due) degree

P 75, l 2545 *Or that, ere that* 2552 *he and hate,* high and hot 2558 *the can,* they began

P 76, l 2574 *hyme makt,* prepare himself, or perhaps simply, make (for the field), go 2582 *helmys last,* last clearly means *laced,* see l 2250 2594 *ȝhit,* although 2599 *dout, fear* 2600 *as assemblit,* made an attack The peculiar use of *assemble* must always be borne in mind 2601 *erd, earth*

P 77, l 2612 *found till gwyans, go to Gwyans* 2614 *til esquyris ther sewyt,* after Esquyris they followed 2619 *one to the melle socht,* made their way to the mêlée 2627 *don bore,* borne down 2630 Fifty thousand It would appear that Galiot had 40,000, of whom 10,000 were held *in reserve*, so that in l 2632 only 30,000 are mentioned See l 2569, 2647

P 78, l 2646 *ten, sorrow, vexation* 2656 *resauf, receive* 2663 *at thar come, at their coming, led, put down* 2670 *biding one the bent,* abide on the grassy plain

P 79, l 2679 "That, despite their efforts, they must needs retire" 2684 *stud aw,* stood in awe, see note to l 1506 2693, 4 These lines do not rhyme But we should certainly read *felde, erde* having slipped in from confusion with l 2691 The knight of Galloway goes to the field, i e joins battle

P 80, l 2712 *On ayar half*, on either side The MS omits to
 2713 *of*, off 2714 *noiss*, nose 2731 *Bot nocht forth*, But not
 on that account

P 81, l 2754 *harmys*, loss 2761 *aucht to ses*, ought to
 cease 2765 *at*, that 2768 *my lef*, my leave, permission 2770
in to cage, in prison

P 82, l 2802 *commandit*, commended

P 83, l 2819 *one ather half*, on either side 2820 *rown*, run
 2821 *howyns*, an ungrammatical form, perhaps *howyng* is meant
 2827 *one hycht*, on height, i.e. aloud 2829 *sterth*, stirreth
 2833 "The lady of Melyhalt made (her way) to him, and im-
 mediately caused his couch to be placed before a window" Mr
 Stevenson reads,

"Of Melyhalt the lady to hym maid

Incontinent his couche, and gart he¹ had," etc

l e "The lady immediately made his bed for him," etc 2841 *wen*
cust, vanquished After this word we should perhaps insert "at," as
 in l 3336

P 84, ll 2877-2880 These lines were printed by me for the first
 time, four lines having been here again omitted by Mr Stevenson
 2880 *but weyne*, without doubt 2884 *to led and stere* to lead and
 direct

P 85, l 2893 *Endlong*, along 2894 *weryne*, were 2913 *let*,
hinder

P 86, l 2925 *dulay*, delay, as in several other places 2938
fek, effect 2944 *zude*, went 2947 *fan*, welfare

P 87, l 2964 *Whill*, until 2970 *ho*, stop, pause 2971 *ver-*
yng *In affray*, were in terror 2972 *rovm*, room 2978 *socht*,
 made his way 2984 *disponit*, intends, but we must insert "not,"
 to complete the sense and the metie

P 88, l 2998 *eschevit* (used passively), is achieved 3003 *o*
knycht, a single knight 3005 *tais*, takes 3006 *fays*, foes 3013
ony or *the nycht*, once ere the night 3015 *that zhe have gult to*
mend, to amend that in which ye have trespassed

P 89, l 3052 *Do at I may*, Do that which I can

P 90, l 3065 This line is printed by Mr Stevenson,

"Curag can [] encresing in¹ his hart",

but it is not clear that a word is wanting, for the metre is as com-
 plete as in many other lines, whilst, as regards the sense, "the
knycht" is probably a nominative without a verb, and l 3065 means,
 "Courage did increase in his heart" Or the reader may, if he
 pleases, insert "fele" Compare l 3058 3066 *lap*, leaped 3079
 Observe the omission of the word "neither" in this line 3080
perst, pierced 3086 *onan*, amon A'S *on-án*

¹ But the MS has "be," also "melyhat" instead of "Melyhalt"

² MS has "to"

P 91, l 3093 *In samyne will, with like intent* 3100 *bet axampil,* better example 3104 *bot, unless, me fall,* befall me 3108 *one vthir, another* 3120 *send, sent* 3121 *lewit one, left one* 3122 *but mercy, without mercy*

P 92, l 3134 *deliuer besynes, clevei readiness* 3136 *aray, livery* 3140 *Ee, eye* 3146 *the morow neu, the early morning* 3160 *deith, dead* 3162 *Suppos, although*

P 93, l 3178 *Nor, we now use but* 3184 *ward, see Glossary tho, then*

P 94, l 3200 *relevnt, relieved* 3201 *driuerss placis sere, as sere = driuerss, one of these words is redundant* So in l 3266 3207 *euyl avysit, ill advised* 3217 "And if it so happen, that they be discomfited"

P 95, l 3240 *leuch, laughed, sarues, service* 3246 *al harll, all whole* 3248 *v thousand mo, ten thousand, and more* 3259 *abard, delay* 3263 *aucht, eight* 3265 *petws for til her, piteous to hear*

P 96, l 3297 *dreuch, drew* 3299 *fellit, fallen* 3304 *leyng, leave*

P 97, l 3307 *sest, ceased* 3321 *ashit at, asked of* 3331 *Wencussith, vanquisheth* 3340 *in to one, continually, which is sometimes the sense of A S on án*

P 98, l 3353 *to fillyng, to fulfil* 3357 *soght, came on, see Glossary* 3359 *Ne war, etc, "Had it not been that they were, individually, the better men"* 3364 *ralef, relieve* 3368 *fellith, fecleth*

P 99, l 3384 *vn slyng, wrestling, i e entangled with, a strong expression* 3385 *assalzeng, assail* 3390 *rowmyth, roometh, emptieth* 3403 *departit, paited* 3404 *dout, fear*

P 100, l 3412 *left, failed* 3423 *The lord, i e Galiot, as I suppose, Mr Stevenson has, "The Lord"* 3430 *stere, to stir, move, come*

P 101, l 3450 *pretendit, endeavour* 3457 *occupye, employ* 3461 *For one hour, etc, "On account of suffering distress for one hour"* 3470 *the well less, much less, see l 1791* 3471 *berd, beard* 3473 *o uoyss, one voice* 3475 *eschef fronne yhow, not, win from you, but, withdraw himself from you* See Glossary

P 102, l 3481 *wend than var no mo, thought they were no more* 3487, *And such encounter, and such encounter* These three words are written at the bottom of the page as a catchword The rest of the MS is wanting

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[As many of the words occurring in "Lancelot" are well explained either in Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary or in Roquefort's "Glossaire de la langue Romane," I have frequently referred to these works by means of the letters J and R. Other abbreviations, as O N for Old Norse, Goth for Mæso Gothic, Su-G for Suo-Gothic, etc., will be readily understood. Ch has also been used as an abbreviation for Chaucer. The various French, Danish, German, and other words referred to in the Glossary are merely added by way of illustration, to indicate in what direction a word may be most easily traced up. To ensure accuracy as far as possible, I have verified every foreign word by the aid of dictionaries, referring for Gothic words to my own Glossary, edited for the Philological Society, for Suo Gothic words, to Ihre's Glossarium, for Icelandic words, to Egilsson, and for Old French words, to Roquefort and Burguy. Whatever errors occur below may thus, I hope, be readily traced.]

Abaid,	delay, tarrying, 1882,	According for, suitable for, 1512
Abyde,	} 2147, 3069, 3308	R accordant
	A S abidan, J	Adied, terrified, 378, 2664 A S on dréulan, to dread
Abasit,	abashed, humbled, di-	Affek, effect, 382 Cf Fek
Abasyt,	spirited, cast down,	Afferd, afraid, 3472 A S afered,
Abaysit,	378, 1452, 2664	aferian
	Abasit of, dispirited by, 3301	Affere, warlike preparation, 985 ,
	R abarser	aspect, bearing, 3043, 3334,
Abasit of (used passively), were		3394 See J , who makes it
	dispirited by, 2243	of Teutonic origin, but it may
Abraid, awoke, 1231, (Ch) A S		be no more than the Q Fr
	on bredan	afeire, afaire=state, condition,
Abwsyt (abused), made an ill use		as explained by Burguy
	of, 1207	Afferith, belongs to, suits, 1550
Access, a fever, or better, a fit of		Affers, is suitable, 1690, 1961
	the ague, Lat <i>accessus febris</i> ,	R aferer
	(Wright's Glossary), 31	Affray, terrified, from the verb
Accorde, to agree with, 1526		Affray (Ch), 2462, 3469 R efraer
	Fr s'accorder	Affray, terror, fright, 636, 3454
Accordith, is suitable for, becomes,		Fr effroi
	1679, 1951, agree therewith,	
	605, is useful for, is fit for, 1204	

- Affy in till, trust to, rely upon, 499, 1394 R *affier*
 Afyre, on fire, 30, 251, hence, used allegorically, in love, 2436
 Agrewit, } aggrieved, vexed, Aggrewit, } 1308, 1538, angry, enraged, 2618 R *agrever*
 Ago, gone, 159 A S *of-gan*
 Aire, are, 1732
 Algat, Algat, always, 1996, 1792 Gothic *gatwō*, a street, way
 Al magre thine, in spite of thee, 115 An expression compounded of A S *al*, wholly, *mangre* (Fr *mal gre*), ill-will, and *thine* (A S *thin*, the gen case of *thū*, thou)
 Al out, altogether, 1676, 1791, etc
 Alowit, approved, 1754 Fr *al louer*
 Als, (1) as, (2) also
 Amen, } pleasant, 64, 999 Lat
 Ameyne, } *amænus*
 Anarmyt, fully armed, 545, 620, 2219, 2771 See *Enarmyt*
 And, if, 1024, 1591, and if (= an if), if, 2376
 Anerly, only, 1476, 1696 A S *den hic*
 Anoit, } annoyed, vexed, 351, Anoyt, } 2244
 Anoyt, annoyeth, 1407
 Anterous, (for Aunterous, the shortened form of Aventurous), adventurous, 2618 Fr *aventure*
 Aparalit, appareled, 338
 Aperans, an appearance, a vision, 364 So also Apperans, 1284
 Apone, upon, 765, etc
 Appetit, desire, 2722 Ch has *appetite* as a verb, to desire
 Aqwynt, acquainted, 1295 Burns uses *acquent*
 Aras, to pluck out, 240 Fr *arracher*
 Araid, disordered, afflicted, 3270
- See *Araye* in Halliwell The examples there given shew that to *araye* sometimes actually signifies to *disorder*
 Arrest, stop, delay, 678, 3072, 3308 Fr *arret*
 Arly, early, 4, 384, 975 A S *arlice*
 Artillery, implements of warfare, 2538 See R *artillerie* Compare 1 Samuel, xx 40
 Assay, (1) assault, trial, 11, 35, 112, 712, attack, 537, 2662 As a verb, to assault, attack, assail, 570, 1044 Fr *assaulvir* (2) to essay, attempt, 2936, to test, 478, 982 Fr *essayer*
 Assaid, } assaulted, 1224, 2641
 Assayt, }
 Assall, assault, attack, 842 We should perhaps read "assail," as in 1 855
 Assalzeing, assail (3 *pers plural*), 3385
 Assemblay, an assembling of knights for a combat, a tournament, 267
 Assemble, a hostile meeting, combat, battle, 978, 3336 See J
 Assemblyng, encountering, 2588
 Assemblyng on, attacking, 2956
 Assey, to test, 478 See Assay
 Astart, to start away from, hence to escape from, avoid, 228, 3296 Ch has *asterte*
 At, that, 1019, etc Compare Dan *at*, O N *at*
 Atour, at over, i.e across, 841, 849, 873, in excess, in addition, besides, 1775
 Ather, either, 2629, 2819, 3264 A S *déghter*
 Atte, at the, 627, 1055
 Aucht, eight, 3263 Compare Ger *acht*
 Auentur, adventure, 601
 Auer, ever, 273, etc

- Auerding to, belonging to (?), 345
 The sense seems to point to the
 A S and *wærðun*, to be pre-
 sent, Goth and *wairths*, pre-
 sent
- Aventur, Auentoure, adventure,
 80, 222
- Aw, owe, deserve, the present
 tense of the verb of which *ought*
 is the past tense, 3447 A S
ah, dīte
- Awalk, awake, 1049 Goth *wakan*
 The form *awalk* occurs in Dun-
 bar,
*"Awalk, luvaris, out of your slomer-
 ing"*
 (The Thistle and the Rose)
- Awant, boast, 2136 A S a verb,
 1588, and as a reflective verb,
 2196, 2386 Fr *se vanter* Ch
 has *avante*
- Awin, own, 89 A S *āgen*
- Awodith, maketh to depart, 2474
 See *Avoid* in Nares' Glossary,
 edited by Halliwell and Wright
- Awow, } vow, 234, 242, 246
- Awoue, } Ch has *avowe*
- Awys, consideration, advisement,
 558
- Awys⁰ the, advise thee, consider,
 1913
- Awys⁰, } to consider, 424, 429
- Awysing, } Fr *s'aviser*
- Awysment, advisement, considera-
 tion, 360, 680
- Ay, ever, continually, 1135, 1486
 A S *ā*
- Ayar (*written instead of Athar*),
 either, 2712
- Ayre, are, 2011
- Ayanis, 744, } against
 Azanis, 1164, 2283, } A S *ongean*
- Azane, Azeine, again, 3253, 380
- Bachleris, bachelors, a name given
 to novices in arms or arts, 1689
 See *bachelor* in R.
- Banaris, banneis, 770
- Baites, 2897 } See Bertes
- Bartus, 3041 }
- Barnag, baronage, nobility, 2492
 See *barne* in R
- Batell, a battalion, division of an
 army, 784, 808, etc
- Be, by A S *be*
- Behest, promise, 2766 A S *behæs*
- Behufis, behoves, 579 A S *be
 hōfan*, often used impersonally
- Behus, } it behoves, it is neces-
- Behwſ, } sary (to do), 944, 2342
 apparently contracted from *be-
 hūſ*
- Belief, *in phr ore* belief = be-
 yond belief, 112
- Bent, a grassy plain (properly a
 coarse grass, in German, *bünke*),
 2670 J
- Bertes, a parapet, a tower, 1007,
 1118, 2815 R *bretesche*, from
 Low Latin *brestachia*
- Betak til, to confer upon, 1724
 A S *be-tēcan*, in the sense, to
 assign
- Betakyne, betoken, 2014 A S
be tæcan, in the sense, to shew
- Bewis, boughs, 338 A S *bōh*
- Billis, letters, 142 Fr *billet*
- Blindis, blindness (?), 1903
- Borde, to meet in a hostile manner,
 encounter, 809 We find in R
border, to joust, fight with lances
 Compare Fr *aborder*, and Spenser's use of *bord* See *horde* in
 Burguy
- Bot, (1) but, (2) without In
 general, *without* is expressed by
but, and the conjunction by
bot, but this distinction is
 occasionally violated
- Bown, ready, prepared, 1036
 O N *būnn*, past part. of *būla*,
 to prepare Su-G *boa*, to pre-
 pare J
- Bretis, fortifications, forts, 874,

- "properly wooden towels or castles *Bretachæ*, castella lignæ, quibus castra et oppida muniebantur, Gallis *Bretesque Du Cange*" Jamieson See *Bertes*
- Bukis, books, 434, 1862
- Burdis, boards, i.e. tables, 2198
A S *bōrd*, which means—1 a plank, 2 a table, etc
- Bur, bore, 733, 778
- But, without, common in the phrase *but were*, without doubt
- But if, unless, except, 958
- Byhecht, } promised, 1485, 2791
- Byhicht, } A S *be hætan*
- Byknow, notorious for, known to be guilty of, 1627 Compare "I know nothing by myself" (1 Cor iv 4) Compare also *Dan bekriende*, to make known
- By, near at hand, 1535, 2916
- Cag, } cage, prison, 997, 2770
- Cage, }
- Can, an auxiliary verb, used nearly as we now use *did*
- Careldis, plural of Careld, a merry-making, revel (?), 1818 "Carande, réjouissance," and "Casoler, danser, se divertir, mener une vie joyeuse" Roquefort
- Catifis, wretches, 2102 R *cartif, captif* Compare Ital *cattivo*
- Chalmer, chamber, 2281, 2308, 2427, 2808 J
- Chare, } chariot, 4, 735 R *cher*
- Cher, }
- Charge, load, 693 Fr *charge*, see *discharge* in the line following (694), meaning to shake off a load
- Chargit, gave attention to, 710, 2454 Fr *se charger de*
- Chen, chain, 2375
- Cher, cai, chariot, 735 See *Chare*
- Chere, cheer, demeanour, 83, 341, 695, sad demeanour, outward grief, 2718 Fr *chère*, compare Ital *ciera*, the face, look "Weynge was hyr moste *chere*" (Le Morte Arthur, l 726)
- Cheſ, choose, 1611, 1636, 2368
A S *ceasan*, Ger *kiesen*, Dutch *kiezen*
- Clarions, clarions, 771, 789
- Clepe, to call, 90, 99 A S *clepan*
- Clepit, calleſt, 93, called, 781
- Clepith, is called, 1919
- Clergy, science, knowledge, 504, 511, 2041 R *clergie*
- Closine, closed, concluded, 316
- Closith, enclosed, shut up, 427
- Cold, called, 753, 1579
- Commandit, commended, 2802
- Comprochit, approached, 2472, 2509
- Conpilour, compiler, poet, 319
- Conquest, conquered, 574, Fyrst-conquest, first conquered, 1545, etc
- Conseruyt, preserved, 332
- Conten (used as a reflective verb), to demean oneself valorously, to maintain one's ground, 823, 1107, 1130 See R "contement, contenance, conduite, maintien, posture"
- Contentit hym, behaved himself, 3219, Contentit them, 2634
- Contentynt, endured, 3190
- Contentioun, contrition, 1415, 1426
- Contynans, demeanour, 1693, 1747
- Counter, encounter, attack, charge, 3239
- Couth, could, 793 A S *cunnan*, past tense, ic *cuðe*
- Cowaidy, cowardice, 1023, 3287
- Cownterit, encountered, 2609, 2621 J
- Crownel, coronal, corolla of a flower, 59 J

- Cummyne, } came, 807, 907
 Comyne, }
 Cumyne, 650, 1136, } come (past
 Cumyng, 447, } part)
 Cummyng, 2498, }
 Cunyng, knowledge, 1455
 Cusynace, 1270,
 Cusynece, 2802, } kinswoman
 Cusynes, 2287,
 Cwsynes, 1185,
 Cwre, care, 98, 266, 643 Lat
 cura (N B Though *Cure* =
 cura, yet *cura* should be dis-
 tinguished from A S *ceanu*)
- Dangei, power to punish, "the power of a feudal lord over his vassals," (Wright), 444 Also, power to injure, 3006 See R *danger*
- Dans, (dance), in the phrase "wrechit dans," evl mode of life, 1321 See Chaucer's use of *dance*, and compare—
 "I saw ȝow lely how tha lye
 Dongen douȝ alle in a *danne*"
 Lawrence Minot, quoted in Specimens of Early English, by R Morris, p 194
- Dede, 90, } death Dan *dod*
 Ded, 3304, } A S *deað* O N
 dāði
- Deden, deign, 949 J
 Dedenyt, designed, 240
- Dead, died, 215
- Deith, dead (past part), 3160
- Delitable, delightful, 1738 R
 delitable
- Deliuver, nimble, clever, 3134
- Deliuery, (cleverly), nimbly, lightly, 3089, 3131 R *delivre*
- Demande, demur, 191, 397, 3052, 3354 See R "demander, contremander, changer, revoquer l'ordre donné"
- Depart, to part, 3421 R *deparir*
- Departit, parted, 3403
- Depaynt, painted, 46, 1703 F_i
depeint Ch *depeint*
- Depend me, waste or consume (my poweis), 214, possibly miswritten for *despend* Cf *Despendat*
- Depend to, to concern, appertain to, 466
- Deren, to speak out, tell, 2376 R *deramer*
- Dereyne, a plea, 2313, "hath o dereyne ydoo," hath appealed to trial by combat R *deramie*
- Des, dais, high table, 2762 R *des*, Lat *discus*
- Deuit, availed, 18 See note
- Devith, } deafen, 92, 94 "Su-
 Dewith, } G *deofwa*, Icel
 deyfa, J Compare Dan
 døe Burns has *deare*
- Dewod the, devoid thyself, 1022
- Deuoydit was = departed, 1031 Compare *Avodith*
- Dewyȝ, to tell, narrate, 373
- Discharg, to put aside one's liability, 163, 1665
- Dises, lack of ease, misery, 707
- Disioint (Disioint?), disjointed, out of joint, hence uncertain, hazardous, 2907 "Disjoint, A difficult situation" Halliwell
- Dispedit, spent, 1808 R *despende*
- Dispens, expenditure, 1746 F_i *dépense*
- Dispolȝeith, despoileth, 1879
- Dispone, to dispose, provide, or, as a reflective verb, to be disposed to do, to intend, 54, 446, 980, 1590, 2428, 2462
- Disponit, declines (?), but much more probably, intends, and we must read "disponit not," 2984
- Dout, fear, 2599, 3404, 3438, (as a verb), to fear, 740, 1827 Ch *doute* R *doubtance*
- Drent, drowned, 1319 A S *dren- can*

- Dref^f (as a reflective verb), to direct oneself, proceed, go, 1975, 2288, 2486 Lat *durige* e Drywith, drives, "he drywith to the end," i.e. concludes, 2470 Duclar, declare, 3022 Dulay, delay, 681, 788, 2925 Effere, shew, pomp, 2360 Compare *Afeie* Efter, after, 217 A S *after* Eld, old age, 3225, 3242 A S *yldo* Gothic *alds* Elyk, Eliche, alike, 182, 2452 Eme, uncle, 2572 A S *edim* Empit, emptied, empty, 180 A S *aemtran* Emplef, to please, 2455 J Emprif, worth, honour, 129, 269, 3458, cf Romans of Partenay, 1 2013 Anxiety, oppression, 393 R *empnindre* Enarmyt, fully armed, 285, 751, 2499 J Endit, indited, 138, indite, 206, inditing, poem (?), 334 If the meaning were, "this ends," the form "endis" would be required, besides which, the rime shews that the *i* is long, cf ll 138, 206 Endlong, along, 2893 A S *andlang*, Ger *entlang* Entent, intention, will, meaning, thoughts, 448, 1451, 1499, 2938 R *entente* Used by Chaucer Entermet, to intermeddle with, to have do with, 2914 R *entre metre* Enweronyt, environed, 53 Erde, earth, 1072, 1540, 2601 Compare Ger *erde* Erdly, earthly, 498 Erith, earth, 128 A S *eord* Eschef (1 eschew), to shun, withdraw himself, 3475 R *eschever*,
- (2 achieve), to accomplish, 2212, 2513 R *eschavn* Es chef deith, to die, 2732 Escheut, achieved, 258 Eschevit, is achieved, 2998 Ef^f, 174, } ease Eef^f, 706, } ease Essenzeis (signs), warcries, 3349, J See also R *ensengne* Euerilkon, every one, 1039, etc Exasy, extasy, 76 (Possibly mis written) Exortith, beseecheth, 3026 Extend, attain, 3281 Failzeis, fail, (3 pers plu. indicative), 1151 Fairhed (fairhood), beauty, 577 In A S *fægernes*, but in Dan *førhed* Fall, to happen, befall, 493, 2139 A S *feallan*, Dan *falde* Fallyng, fallen, 1217, 1322 Falowschip, used as we now use company, 1105, 2687, etc Falzeing, failing, 1499 Falzett, Falzheit, failed, 1460, 1469, 1498, 1503 Farhed, beauty, 2440 See *Fairhed* Fayndit (feigned), dissembled, 2397 Fays, foes, 3006 A S *fah* Fechland, fighting, 2691, 3127, 3407 Ger *fechten* Fechteris, fighters, 686 Feill, knowledge, skill, 2854 J A S *félan* Fek (effect), sum, amount, result, drift, 2938 Fr *effet* Fell, to feel, 820, 2131 Fellith, feeleth, 3368 Fell, many, als fell, as many, 768 A S *féala*, Gothic *filu* Fell, horrible, 260 A S *fell*, cruel, fierce Ferde, fourth, 815, 973, 2285 Compare Dan *fierde*

- Ferleit, wondered, 3117 A S *fēr lu*, sudden, fearful Burns has *fearie*
- Fet, fetched, 433, 1154 A S *fecan*, past tense, *ic feahte*
- Fongith, catcheth, seizeth, 1922 A S *fangan*, Goth *fahan*
- Forfare, to fare amiss, to perish, 1348 A S *fō faran*
- Forlorn, lost, 3305 A S *fōlōn*, cf Goth *fī a husan*
- Foi quhy, see *Foi-why*
- For thi, } (there fore), on that ac-
- For thy, | count, 332, 2261, 2731 A S *forthý*, where *thý* (Gothic *thè*) is the instrumental case of *se*, that
- For wrocht (for wrought), over-worked, wearied out, 888 A S *foryrcan*
- Foi why, 798, 925, 2209, } foi
- Foi quhy, 2171, 2342, 2290, } the reason that, because that
- Found, to advance, go, 2612 J A S *fundrian*, to try to find, go forward
- Franchis, generosity, 230 R *franchise*
- Fremmytnes, strangeness, alienation, 1508 A S *fiendnes*
- Froit, enjoyment, 1644, fruit, 2088, 2109 R *frut*
- Frome, from the time that, 17, 1432 Goth *frums*, a beginning
- Fruschit, broken, dashed in pieces, 1201 R *fros*, broken, from the verb *froter*
- Fundyne, 497, } found (past
- Fundyng, 465, } part)
- Fyne, faithful, true, 519 See R "fine, fidele," and "fine, foi"
- Fyne, end, 1388, 2081 Fr *fin*
- Ganith, is suitable for, 991 Icel *gegna* J Compare Dan *garme*
- Ganyth, it, it profits, used impersonally, 121 R *gaagner*
- Gare, to cause, 910, 2416 Dan *gwore*, Icel *gwā*
- Gart, caused, 267, 2777
- Gentilcſ, 917, 1847 See *Gentice*
- Gentrice, 130, 2757, } courtesy,
- Gentrif, 2790 } nobleness R *gentlesse*
- Gere, gear, equipment, armour, 2777 A S *gearwa*
- Gert, 384 See *Gart*
- Giffis, give thou, (lit gave ye, the plural being used in addressing the king), 463 A S *gyfan*
- Gifyne, given, 1752
- Gilt, offended, done wrong, 699, 3015 A S *gyltan*
- Grewhundis, greyhounds, 533, 537 "O N *grey, grey hundr*, a bitch" Wdgwood
- Gowerne the, conduct thyself, 1598
- Gravis, groves, 2481 Ch *gneves*
- Gyrſ, grass, 10 A S *geis*
- Gyſ, guise, fashion, custom, 545 Ch *gise*
- Haade, had, 2150
- Habariowne, habergeon, 2889 From *haubergeon*, the French form of Ger *halsberge* See *Hawbrik*
- Haburounne, habergeon, 3380
- Heill, whole, 3246 A S *hæl*
- Haknay, an ambling horse for a lady, 1730 R *hacquenee*
- Half, in the phrase on Arthur's side, 883 Compare use of Germ *halb*
- Halk, a hawk, 1736, 2482 A S *hafoc*
- Hall, } various spellings of Haill,
- Holl, } whole
- Hail, }
- Hals, neck, 1054 A S *hals* Goth. *hals*



- Hant, to exercise, practise, 2191
 Fr *hanter*, lit to frequent
- Hardement, 801, 2669, } haidi
- Hardyment, 900, 3362, } hood,
 boldness R *hardement*
- Harrold, herald, 1047
- Hate, hot, 2552
- Havith, hath, 1940, have, 3404
- Hawbrek, 1070, 1200, } hauberk,
- Hawbryk, 3112, } neck de-
 fence, Ger *hal's berge*, armour
 for the neck
- Hawnt, to use, 3418 See *Hant*
- Hawntus, exercise, 2772
- He, high, 1969, 2552 A S
hāh
- Hecht, hight, is called, 2140, was
 called, 2290
- Hecht, to promise, 3101, promised
 (*past part.*), 1142 A S *hatan*
- Hedis, heads, 538, 869
- Hewy, 442, } heavy A S *hefig*
- Heuy, 459, }
- Hie, 550, } high See *He*
- Hye, 297, }
- Hienes, highness, 126
- Ho, pause, stop, cessation, 2970
 According to J radically the
 same with the verb *Houe*, or
How (see *Hout*) The Dutch,
 however, use *hou*, hold' from
houden, to hold
- Holl, whole, 106, 745
- Hore, hair, 365
 "Holze were his yzen and vnde
 campe hoies"
 (Early English Alliterative
 Poems, ed Morris See Poem
 B I 1695) The meaning of
 the line quoted is, "Hollow
 were his eyes, and under bent
 hairs"
- Hot, hight, was called, 754, 806,
 is called, 1950 A S *hātan*
 (neuter)
- Hout, delayed, tarried, halted,
 996 "W *hofian hofio*, to
- fluctuate, hove, suspend,"
- Morris
- Hovith, stays, halts, 2829
- Howit, halted, 2814, 2842
- Howyns, halts, tarries, 2821 Pro-
 bably miswritten for "howyng"
- Hufyng, halting, delaying, 1046
- Hundyre, a hundred, 756, 1554
- I, in, 332 Dan *i*, Icel *i*
- Icloisit, y-closed, i e enclosed,
 shut in, 53
- If, to give, 554 In lines 1718-
 1910 the word occurs repeat-
 edly in several forms, as *ifis*,
iffith, giveth, *ifis*, give ye (put
 for give thou), *ifyne*, given,
 etc
- Ifyne, to give, 3454
- Ifits, gifts, 1741 In the line
 preceding we have *giftis*
- Ilk, the ilk (= thilk) that, 629,
 1601 Literally, the ilk = the
 same A S *ylc* See 1367
- Ilk, each, 2211, etc A S *alk*
- Illumynare, luminary, 3
- Incontinent, } immediately, 253,
- Incontynent, } 1215, 2647, 2834
 Still used in French
- In to contynent (= Incontinent),
 3020
- In to, used for "in," *passim*
- Iornaye, journey, 680
- Irk, to become slothful, grow
 weary, tire, 2709 A S *eargian*
- Iuperty, combat, 2547 Fr *jeu*
 parti, a thing left undecided,
 hence the meanings, 1 strife,
 conflict, 2 jeopardy, as in Ch
 See J, and Tyrwhitt's note to
 C T 16211
- Iwond, 245, } wounded We
- Iwondit, 226, } find in A S
 both *wünd* and *wounded*
- I-wyf, certainly, of a surety,
 1709, 1925, 1938 A S *gewis*,
 Ger *gewiss* Often *wrongly* in-

- terpreted to mean, *I know* See *Wit*
- Kend, known, 548, 906
- Laif, the remainder (lit what is left), 1802, 3472 A S *laf*
Burns has "the *lave*"
- Lametable, lamentable, 3265 The omission of the *n* occurs again in I 2718, where we have *lemytable*
- Larges, liberality, 608, 1681, 1750 Fr *largesse*
- Larg, prodigal, profuse, 2434
- Lat, impediment, 958 A S *lætan*, means (1) to suffer, (2) to hinder
- Lat, to let, permit (used as an auxiliary verb), 803
- Latith, preventeth, 1927
- Law rare, a laurel, 82 Ch *laure*
- Learis, liars, 493
- Led, put down, beat down, depressed, overpowered, 2663 It is the past tense of A S *lecgan*, to lay, to cause to submit, to kill
- Lef, to live, 564, 3230
- Leful, lawful, 1427
- Legis, lieges, subjects, 1957 R *lige*, Lat *ligatus*
- Leich, leech, physician, 106 A S *læce*, Dan *laege* See 520, 2056
- Leif, to live, 952, 1392 A S *lybban*, Goth *liban*
- Leir, to learn, 1993 Comp D *leeren*
- Lest, to list, to please, 555, 621 A S *lystan*
- Lest, to last out against, sustain, 811 A S *læstan*
- Lest, least, 1628
- Let, hindrance, 2495
- Leuch, laughed, 3240 A S *hhhan*, past tense *ic hloh*
- Lewis, liveth, 1209
- Lewith, left, deserted, 1854
- Liging, 376 The sense requires *lay*, i e the 3rd *p s pt t m dñ*, but properly the word is the present participle, *lying*
- Longith, belongeth, 738, 1921, 2429, 2778 Compare Dan *lange*, to reach
- Longith, belonged, 3242
- Longyne, belonging, 433
- Lorn, lost, 2092, destroyed, 2740 See *Fer lorn*
- Loß, praise, 1777 Lat. *laus* Ch has *losed*, praised
- Low, { (1) law, 1602, 1628, 1636, (2) love, 29, 1620 It is sometimes hard to say which is meant Compare Dan *lov*, law, A S *luf*, love
- Luges, tents, 874, 881, 2500, 2680 Fr *logie*, *logis*, Ger *laube*, a bow1, from *laub*, foliage, Gothic *laút*, a leaf
- Lugyne, a lodging, tent, 891
- Lyt, a little, 1233 At lyte, in little, used as an expletive, 143
- Ma, short form of Make, 953
- Maad, made, 697
- Magre of, in spite of, 500, 960, 2679, 2702, 2711 Sometimes "magre" is found without "of" Fr *mal gré*
- Mataalent, } displeasure, anger, Mataalent, } 2169, 2660 In both cases Mr Stevenson wrongly has *matalent* R *matalent*, *matalent*
- Mayne, 1026 See *Men*
- Medyre, mediator (?), 1624 I am not at all sure of this word, but we find in R many strange forms of "mediator," such as *méener*, *méensneres*, etc. In the Supplement to the "Dictionnaire de l'Academie" we find *mediaire*, qui occupe le milieu, from Low Lat *mediarius* N.B.

- In the MS the "d" is indistinct See *mediane* in Ducange
- Mēit, to dream, 363 A S *mætun*
- Mekill, much, 876, 1236 Mokil, 1265
- Melle, contest, battle, 2619 Fr *melee*, J
- Memoratyve, mindful, bearing in remembrance, 1430 Fr *memoratif*
- Men, mean, way, "be ony men"
= by any means, 2366, so, too, "be ony mayne," 1026 Fr *moyen*
- Men, to tell, declare, 510 A S *menan*
- Menye, a company, multitude (without special reference to number), whence "a few menye," a small company, 751 Apparently from A S *mennigū*, Ger *menge*, but it may have nothing to do with the modern word *many*, and is more probably from the O F *maisnēe*, a household
- Met, dreamt, 440 See *Mēit*
- Meyne, 41 See *Men*
- Misgvit, misguided, 1663 R *querer*
- Mo, more, 3187, etc A S *ma*
- Mon, man, 96
- Moneth, month, 569 A S *mónað*, Goth *menoth*
- Morow, morning, 1, 30, 64, 341 Goth *matírgins*
- Mot, must, 195 A S *u mótt*
- Mys, a fault, 1888, 1937, 3230 A S *mis* Do o myf, to commit a fault, 1926
- Mysour, measure, 1830
- Myster, need, 1877, 2322 Ch *mistere*, R *mester*, Lat *ministerium* Cf Ital *mestiere*
- Nat, naught, 703 Shortened from A S *ná wuht*, i.e. *no wht*
- Nece, nephew, 2200, 2245, 2720 R *niez*
- Nedlyngis, of necessity, 2337, J A S *neadinga*
- Nemmyt, considered, estimated, 649, 2852 A S *nemnan*, to name, call
- Ner, near, 441
- Neulyngis, newly, again, 36, J A S *nwe lice* (?)
- Newis, for Nevis, nieves, fists, 1222 Icel *hnefti* Dan *næve* Burns has *nieve*, Shakspeare *neif*
- Noght, not, 1182
- Noif, nose, 2714 R *néis*
- Nome, name, 226, 320, 1546, 3341 Fr *nomme*
- Nome, took, 591, 1048 A S *niman*, past tense, ic *nám*
- Northeast, north east, 677
- Not (shortened from Ne wot), know not, 522, 3144 A S *nat*, from *nitan* = ne *witan*
- Not, naught, 720 See *Nat*
- Noyth, annoyeth, 904 Fr *nure* Lat *noceire*
- Noyt, annoyed, offended, 471
- Nys, } (nice), foolish, 127, 1946
- Nyce, } Fr *mair*
- O, a, an, *passim*, one, a single, 2998, 3003, 3393, etc
- Obeisand, obedient, 641
- Obef, obey, 2134
- Oblast, obliged, 969
- Occupy, to use, employ, 3457, to dwell, 75 Lat *occupare*
- Of, with, 66
- Oft-syf, oft times, 2304, 2594, 2789, 2885, 2929 See *Syf*
- On, and, 519 Possibly a mistake
- One, on, often used for In, One to = unto
- Onan, } anon, 158, 1466, 2602,
- Onone, } etc The form "onan,"
- Onon, } 1 3086, suggests the

- derivation of *unon*, viz from
A S *on an*, in one, hence,
forthwith, immediately
- Onys, once, at some time or
other, 3013, at onys, at once,
3187
- Opin, 1286, } open
Opine, 13, }
- Or, ere, before, 77, 1887, 2545
A S *ær*
- Ordand, to set in array, 784, to
prepare, procure, 1713 R
ordener, Lat *ordinare*
- Oidan, to provide, 2416, 2777
- Ordynat, ordained, 490 See 1
507
- Orest (= Arrest), to arrest, stop,
3186
- Orient, east, 5
- Oucht, it, it is the duty of (=
Lat *dubet*), 2995 Strictly, we
should here have had "it
owes" (*dubet*), not "it ought"
(*dubit*) See *Aw*
- Ourfret, over adorned, decked out,
71, 2480 A S *fætwian*, to
trim, adorn
- Out throng (= Lat *expressit*), ex-
pressed, uttered, 65 A S *ut*,
out, and *þringan*, to press
- Owthrag, outrage, 3454 R *out-
rage*, Ital *oltraggio*, from Lat
ultra The MS has *outay*,
probably owing to confusion
with *afray* in the same line
We find "owtrag" in 1 2578
- Oyf, to use, 1701, J
- Paid, pleased, ill paid, displeased,
908 Low Lat *pagare*, to pay,
satisfy
- Palzons, pavilions, tents, 734,
plural of
- Palzoune, a pavilion, a tent, 1305
R gives *pavillon*, a tent, of
Low Lat *papilio*, a tent
- Pan, pain, 1273
- Pas hyme, to pace, go, 362
- Pat, to go, 1213
- Pasing, pacing, departing, 371,
surpassing, 303, 346, 689, etc
- Pens, to think of, 1431 Fr
penser
- Planly, at once, 3319 J gives
"Playn, out of hand, like fr
de plain" In the same line
"of" = off
- Plant, plaint, complaint, 137 Fr
plainte
- Plesance, Plesans, pleasure, 941,
1939
- Plessith, pleases, 68
- Possede, to possess, 578 Fr
posseder
- Poware, a power, a strong band of
men, 2647 We now say *force*
- Powert, poverty, 1330, 1744
- Pief, to prove, 2229, 3476
- Piekand, pickling, spicing, 3089
See the very first l of Spenser's
Faerie Queene
- Prekyne, 2890 showy (?) gaudy (?)
J gives "Pieek, to be spruce,
to crest, as 'A bit *preek'n* bodie,'
one attached to dress, to *prich*,
to dress oneself" Compare D
pychen
- Pretend, to attempt, aspire to,
3282, 3465 Fr *prétendre*
So, too, in lines 559, 583
- Pretendit, endeavour, attempt,
3442
- Process, narration, 316 Wright
gives "Proces, a story or rela-
tion, a process" The writer is
referring to his prologue or in-
troduction
- Promyt, to promise, 965
- Proponit, proposed, 361, 445
- Pupil, people, 285
- Purple, people, 1367, 1498, 1520
- Pur, 1648,
- Pure, 1697, } poor
- Pwre, 1655, }

- Quh- Words beginning thus beginning in modern English with Wh
Thus, Quhen = when, etc
- Quhilk (whilk), which, 184 A S *hwylc* = Lat *quals* rather than *qui*
- Quhill, while, used as a noun, 1229, 1293 A S *hwurl*, a period of time
- Quhill, until, 24, 198 See *Whill*
- Quhy, the quhy = the why, the reason, 123, 1497
- Qwheelis, wheels, 736 A S *hwewl*
- Qwheyar, whether, 1187
- Quhors, } whose, 171, 1297
- Qwhois, }
- Rachus, hounds, 531 Su G *racka*, a bitch, which from the v *racka*, to race, course. Perhaps connected with *brach*
- Radur, fear, 1489, J From Su G *rædd*, fearful, Dan *ræd*
- Raddour, 2133, } fear
- Radour, 1835, 3465, }
- Raid, rode, 3070, 3260, etc
- Ralef, relieve, 3364
- Ramed, remedy, 117 See *Remed*
- Randoune, in, 2542 The corresponding line (l 739) suggests that in *Randoune* = *al about*, i.e. in a circuit. But if we translate it by "in haste," or "in great force," we keep nearer to the true etymology. In Ogilvie's Imperial Dictionary, s v Random, we find the Noi Fr *randonnée* explained to mean the "sweeping circuit made by a wounded and frightened animal," but the true meaning of *randonnée* is certainly *force, impetuosity*, see R, Cotgrave, etc. In Danish, *rand* is a surrounding edge or margin, while in Dutch we find *rondom* round about
- Raquer, require, 2409
- Raf, race, swift course, 3088 A S *ræs* Compare Eng *mill-race*, and D *ras*
- Recidens, delay, 2359 R *residērī*, to defer
- Recist, resist, 566, 660, 2578
- Recountenit, met (in a hostile manner), encountered, 2958 Fr *rencontrer*
- Recoid, witness, testimony, hence value, 388 R *record*
- Recorde, to speak of, mention, hard recorde, heard say, 121, 595
- Recorde, speak out, 454, 481 See R *recorder*
- Recordith, is suitable, belongs, 606
- Recourse, to return, 1798 Lat *recurrere*
- Red, to advise, 1027, 1198 A S *rædān*, Goth *rītan*
- Relewit (relieved), lifted up again, rescued, 2617 Fr *reloui* J
- Remede, 89, } remedy
- Remed, 718, }
- Remut, remove, 655
- Report, to narrate, 266, to explain, 294, to state, 320
- Reprefe, reproof, defeat, 764
- Reput, he reputed, i.e. thought, considered, 743
- Resauit, received, 2796
- Resawit, received, kept, 2106 We should have expected to find "reseruit"
- Resonite, resounded, 66
- Resydens, delay 670 See *Recidens*
- Revare, 275,
- Rewar, 2893, } river
- Rewere, 2812, }
- Reweyll, proud, haughty, 2853 R *revele*, fier, hautain, orgueil leux Compare Lat *rebellare*
- Richwysnes, righteousness, 1406 A S *ihticnes*

- Rigne, 94, 1527, } a kingdom Ii
 Ring, 1468, } *regne* Ch
 Ringe, 1325, } *regne*
 Rignis, kingdoms, 1858
 Rignis, Rignith, reigneth, 1825,
 782
 Ringne, a kingdom, 1952
 Rout, a company, a band, 812,
 2956, 3403 Rowt, 2600
 Rowmyth, roometh, i.e. makes
 void, empties, 3390 A S
 rīman
 Rown, run, *past part* 2488, 2820
 Rwn, run, 2545
 Rygnis, kingdoms, 1904
 Ryne, to run, 113 See 2952
 Ryng, to reign, 1409, 2130
- Sa, so, 3322, 3406 Dan *sau*
 Sarde, said, 698
 Salust, saluted, 546, 919, 1553,
 2749 Ch *salut*
 Salosing, salutation, 1309
 Sar, sorely, 1660
 Sauch, saw, 817, 1219, 1225
 A S *ic seih*, from *reón*
 Schawin, shewn, 2387
 Schent, disgraced, ruined, 1880
 A S *scendan*, Dan *shænule*
 Schrewit, accursed, 1945
 Scilla, the name of a bird, also
 called Ciris, 2483
 — “plumis in avem mutata vocatur
 Ciris, et a tonso est hoc nomen adeptus
 capillo” — (Ovid, Met. viii 150)
 Screwis, shrews, ill-natured persons, 1053 More often used
 of males than females in old
 authors
 Sedulis, letters, 142 R *cedule*
 Sege, a seat, 2258 Fr *siege*
 Semble, a warlike assembly, hos-
 tile gathering, 988, 2206
 Semblit, assembled, 845 G *sam-
 meln*, from Goth. *sama, samana*
 Sembyng, encountering, 2951
 See *Assemble*
- Sen, since, 709, 800, etc Sen at,
 since that In *Piers Plowman*
 we find *syn*
 Scripture, sceptic, 666
 Seue, several, various, 594, 731,
 746 “Su G *sei*, adv denoting
 separation” J Cf Lat *se*
 Ses, to cease, 14, etc Fr *cesser*
 Set, although
 Sew, to follow up, seek, 2326
 R *suu*, Fr *suivre*
 Sew, to follow up, go, proceed,
 3145 Sewyt, 2614
 Shauyth, shcwith, 412
 Sice, such, 2115 Scotch, sic
 Snibbyth, snubs, checks, 3387
 Comp D *sneb*, a beak, *snebbig*,
 snappish
 Sobing, sobbing, morning, 2658
 Socht, { sought to go, and hence,
 Sought, { made his (or their) way,
 proceeded, went, 2619, 3179,
 3357, 3428 Sought one, ad-
 vanced upon, attacked, 3149,
 3311 Sought to, made his
 way to, 3130 A S *secan*, past
 tense *ic schite*, to seek, approach,
 go towards
 Sor, sorrow, anxiety, 74 A S
 sorh, Goth *sawga*
 Sort, lot, fate, 26 Fr *sort*
 Sound, to be consonant with, 149
 See Gloss to Tyrwhitt's Chau-
 cer Lat *sonare*
 Soundith, 1811 “So the puple
 soundith,” so the opinion of the
 people tends
 “As fer as soundeth into honestee”
 (Chaucer *Monkes Prologue*)
 Soundith, tend, 1943, tends,
 149
 Sown, sound, 1035 Fr *son*
 Sownis, sounds, 772, 3436
 Spent, fastened, clasped, 2809
 A S *spannan*, to clasp, join
 Comp Dan *spænde*, to stretch,
 span, buckle together

- Spere, } sphere, 6, 170 , speris,
Spur, } spheres, circuits, 24
Spere, to inquire, 1170 A S
 spurian, to track Cf G
 spur
Sperithus, spear's, 810
Spill, to destroy, ruin, 1990
 A S *spillan*
Spreit, spirit, 81, 364
Stak, 226 J gives "to the
steeks, completely," and this
is the sense here See Jamie-
son s v "Steik" Halliwell
gives *stake*, to block up, also
steck, a stopping place (cf
Shakespeare's *sticking place*,
Macb i viii l 60) In the N
of France it is said of one killed
or severely wounded, *il a eu*
son estoque, he has had his
belly ful, from *estoque*, to
cram, satiate, "stodge" Com-
pare Ital *stucco*, cloyed It
has also been suggested that
to the *stak* may mean to the
stock, i.e up to the hilt, very
deeply
Start, started up, leapt, 994,
1094
Stede, stead, place, 218, 1124
 A.S *stede*
Steir, to stir, 817 A S *stiran*
Stekith, shuts, 1651 Ger *stecken*
 Burns has *stek*
Stek, shut, concluded, 316
Stell, steel, 809 Stell commonly
means a stall, or fixed place,
but the form *stell* for *steel*
occurs, e.g "Brounstelle was
heuy and also kene" Arthur,
1 97
Sterapis, 3056, } stirrups A S
Steropis, 3132, } *str·ap* or *stge-*
 rap, from *stigan*, to mount, and
 rap, rope
Stere, ruler, arbiter, 1020, con-
trol, guidance, 1974
Stere, to rule, control, 1344, 2884,
 A S *styrn*
Stere, to stir, move, go, 3430
 See *Steir*
Sterith, stirreth, 2829
Sterf, to die, 1028 A S *steorfan*
Sterit, governed, 612 A S *styrnan*
Start, started, 377
Stok, the stake to which a baited
bear is chained, 3386
Stour, conflict, 1108, 2607, 3124
 R *estour*
Straucht, stretched out, 3090 A S
 streccan, past part *gestreht*
Strekith, stretcheth, i.e exciteth
to his full stride, 3082
Subiet, 1799, } subject, sub
Subitis, 1828, } jects
Subittis, 1878, }
Sudantly, Sodantly, suddenly,
1009, 1876
Suet, sweet, 331
Suppris, (surprise), overwhelming
power, 691, 860, 2651, oppres-
sion, 1352 Fr *surprendre*, to
catch unawares
Suprisit, overwhelmed, 1237,
1282, overpowered, 2705,
3208 Suprisit ded, suddenly
killed, 3125
Surryzenis, surgeons, 2726
Suth, sooth, true, 110 A.S *sōð*
Suthfastnes, truth, 1183, A S
 sōðfestnes
Sutly, soothly, truly, 963
Swelf, a gulf such as is in the
centre of a whirlpool, a vortex,
1318, J A S *swelgan*, to swal-
low up
Sweuen, a dream, 440 A S *swefn*
Swtih, sooth, true, 2753 See
 Suth
Syne, 2026, } sin
Synne, 2029, }
Syne, afterwards, next J 45,
794, etc
Syß, times, 3054 A S *sīð*

- Tus, 1095, 3005, } takes Abbie-
Faus, 1141 } vated, as
“ma” is from “make” See Ma
Tane, taken, 264
Ten, gruf, vexation, 2646, 3237
A S *teonan*, to vex
Tennandis, tennants, vassals holding
heifs, 1729 R *temancier*
Than, then, 3111
The, (1) they, (2) thee, (3) thy
Thelle, that, 709 See I 629,
where the *ih* occurs, and see
Ilh
Thir, these, those, 2734, 2745,
2911, 3110, etc
Thithingis, tidings, 2279 A S
tidan, to happen
Tho, then, 545, 2221, them, 2368
Thoore, there, 628 Thoie, 1102
Thrid, third, 370, 2347, 2401
A S *pidda*
Throng, closely pressed, crowded,
3366 A S *prngan*
Til, to, til have, to have, 706
Tint, lost, 1384 See *Tyne*
Tithandis, tidings, 2310
Thithingis, tidings, 902, 2336
To, too, besides, 3045
Togidder, together, 254
To-kerwith, carves or cuts to
pieces, al to-kerwith, cuts all
to pieces, 868 A S *to ceorfan*
The prefix *to-* is intensive, and
forms a part of the verb See
Judges ix 53 “All to brake
his skull,” i.e. utterly brake,
sometimes misprinted “all to
break” (!)
Ton, taken, 1054, 1071
Ton, one, the ton, the one, 1822
The tone = A S *þat dne*
To schent, disfigured, 1221 The
intensive form of the A S verb
scendan, to shame, destroy In
the same line we have *to-hunt*,
and in the next line *to-rent*,
words modelled on the same
form We find, e.g., in Spenser,
the forms *all to ient*, *all to
bius'd* (See the note on the
prefix *To-* in the Glossary to
William of Palerne)
Tothui, the other, 2536 The tothui
= A S *þat opere*, where *þat* is
the neuter gender of the definite
article Burns has *the tithei*,
Toyer (= tother), the other, *y* be-
ing written for the A S *þ(ih)*,
2571, 2584
Trast, to trust, to be confident,
390, 1129, 1149, J Trast,
1659
Trausting of (trusting), reliance
upon, or expectation of, 25, J
Translat, 508, } to transfer, ie
Transulat, 2204, } move
Tratory, treachery, 3224 See R
trator
Tretv, treatise, 145 Fr *traité*
Trewis, true, 1568, 2488, 2545
Tronsione, 239, } a trunk
Trunscyoune, 2962, } cheon, a
Trownscleown, 2890, } stump of
a spear Fr *tronçon*, from
Lat *troncus* In the last pas-
sage it means a sceptre, *baton*
“One hytte hym vpon the olde wounde
Wyth A tronchon of an ore, ” (oar)
(*Le Morte Arthur*, I 3071)
Troucht, truth, 161
Tueching, 403, } touching
Tweching, 386, }
Tyne, to lose, 1258, 1387 Icel
tyna
Tynith, loseth, 1761
Tynt, lost, 175, 1384, 1521
Unwist, unknown, 1140
Valis, falls, we should read
“falis,” 2475
Valkyne, to waken, 8 See *Awak*
Vall, billow, wave, 1317 Ger
welle, a wave, *quelle*, a spring,

- Icel *vella*, to *well* up, boil Cf also A S *wrl*, Du *wiel*, Lan cashire *weele*, an eddy, whirl pool So, too, in Burns —
- “Whyles owre a linn the burnie plays,
As thro the glen it wimpl t,
Whyles round a rocky scaur it stays,
Whyles in a *wel* it dimpl t”
- Varand, to warrant, protect, 3411 R *varandr*
- Varnit, warned, 622
- Vassolag, a deed of prowess Passing vassolag, surpassing valour, 257 R has *vasselage*, courage, valour, valourious deeds, as indicative of the fulfilment of the duties of a *vassal* We now speak of rendering *good service*
- Vassolage, valour, 2724
- Veir, were, 818
- Veris, wars, 305 See *Were*
- Veryng, were, 2971 A S *wéron*
- Vicht, a wight, a person, 10, 55, 67 A S *usht*
- Virslyng, wrestling, struggling, 3384 J gives the forms *warsell*, *wersill*
- Visare, wiser, 607
- Viting, to know, 410 A S *witan*
- Vncouth, lit *unknown*, hence little known, rare, valuable, 1734 A S *uncūð*
- Vodus, woods, 1000
- Vombe, womb, bowels, 375 Goth *wamba*
- Vondit, wounded, 700
- Vpwarpit, warped up, i.e drawn up, 63 See Note to this line It occurs in Gawain Douglas's prologue to his translation of the 12th Book of the *Aeneid* Du *opverpen*, from Goth *wahnpan*, to cast
- Vsyt, used, 1197, 1208
- Vyre, a cross-bow bolt, 1092 R *vrre*, cf Lat *verttere*
- Wald, would, 419, 470, etc
- Walkin, to waken, wake, 1239 See *Auath*
- Wapnis, weapons, 241 A S *weapen*, or *wépn*
- Ward, world, 3184 Giose's Provincial Dictionary gives *Ward* = world, and the omission of the *l* is not uncommon, see *Genesis and Exodus* (E E T S), II 32, 1315
- Wassolage, valour, 2708 See *Vassolag*
- Wat, know, 512
- Wawasouris, vavasours, 1729 A Vavasour was a sub vassal, holding a small fief dependent on a larger fief, a sort of esquire R *vavaseun*
- Weil, very Weil long, a very long time, 79 Comp Ger *uel*, J
- Wencussith, vanquisheth, 3331, vanquished, 3337
- Wencust, vanquished, 2841
- Wend, (1) to go, 2191, (2) weened, thought, 3481
- Wentail, ventail, a part of the helmet which opened to admit air, 1056 R *ventale*, from Lat *ventus*
- Were, (1) war Fr *guerre* R *werre*, 308, etc (2) doubt, 84, etc “But were,” without doubt A S *wér*, cautious, *wary* (3) worse, 1930 Burns has *waur*
- Wering, weary, 58 A S *wéring*
- Werray, very, true, 1262, 2017
- Werroure, warrior, 248
- Wenour, warrior, 663
- Wers, worse, 515
- Weryng, were, 2493
- Wex, to be grieved, be vexed, 156
- Weyn, vain, 382, 524
- Weyne, in phr but *weyne*, without doubt, 2880 A S *wénan*, to ween, to suppose

- Whill, until, 1136, J Formed from A S *hwil*, a period of time
- Wice, advice, counsel, 1909 Shortened from Awys
- Wichsaif, vouchsafe, 355, 1391
- Wichsauf, *id* 2364
- Wicht, wight, person, 131
- Wicht, strong, nimble, 248 "Su-
G *wig*," J Sw *wig*
- Wight, with, 918 Possibly mis-
written
- Wist, knew, 225, 1047 See *Wit*
- Wit, to know, 268 A S *witan*,
pres *ic wat*, past tense, *u
wiste*
- Wit, knowledge, 2504
- With, by, 723
- Withschaif, vouchsafe, 1458
- With-thy, on this condition, 961
See *Hof thy*
- Wnkouth, little known, 146 See
Vnouth
- Wnwemmyt, undefiled, 2097
A S *wam, wem*, a spot
- Wnwyst, unknown, secretly, 219,
269
- Wod (wood), mad, 3334, 3440
A S *wōd* Goth *uōds*
- Wond, mad, 2695 Perhaps we
should read *woud*
- Wonde, wand, rod, or sceptre of
justice, 1601, 1891 J
- Wonk, winked, 1058
- Wonne, to dwell, 2046 A S
wunnan
- Worschip, honour, 1158, 1164
A S *worð scipe*
- Wot, know, 192, etc See *Wit*
- Wox, voice, 13 Lat *vox*
- Woyf, voice, 3473
- Wrechitnes, misery, 2102, miser-
liness, niggardliness, 1795, 1859
- Wy, reason, "to euery wy," for
every reason, on all accounts,
2356 Compare *Quhy*
- Wycht, strong, nimble, 2592 See
Wicht
- Wynth, getteth, acquireth, 1832
- Wyre, across bow bolt, 3290 See
Vyne
- Wys, vice, 1795 Wysis, 1540
- Y, written for "th" Thus we
find "oeyi" for "other," etc
The error arose with scribes
who did not understand either
the true form or force of the
old symbol þ
- Yif, give, 387
- Yald, yield, 553, yielded, 558
A S *gildan*
- Yclepit, called, 414
- Yef, give, 563
- Yeif, give, 923
- Yer, yei, 610 Used instead of
the plural "jens," as in I
3243
- Yewyne, given, 1500
- Ygrave, buried, 1800 Comp
Gei beg aben
- Yhere, ear, 1576
- Yhei, year, 2064 Used instead
of "yheis," 3243
- Yhis, yes, 1397
- Yis, yes, 514, thus, 160
- Ylys, isles, 2858, 2882
- Ymong, among, 821
- Yneuch, enough, 2135 A S *genog*
- Yolde, yielded (to be), 951, 1088
- Ystatut, appointed, 2529 Ir
statuer
- Ywyf, certainly, 1798, 1942 See
Iwyf
- 3eme, to take of, regard, have re-
spect to, 665 A S *gēman*
- 3ere, year, 342
- 3erys, years, 23, 1432
- 3ewith, giveth, 1772
- 3ha, yes, 2843 Ger *ja*
- 3he, ye, 921 Observe that, as in
this line, *ye* (A S *ge*) is the
nominative, and *you* (A S *eow*)
the objective case
- 3hed, went, 1486 Ch has *yede*

A S <i>ic eóde</i> , past tense of <i>gán</i> ,	2772
to go Goth <i>ik iiddja</i> , past tense of <i>gaggan</i> , to go	3hud, went, 2696 See 3hed
3her, year, 2064, 2274	3is, yes, 3406
3hung, young, 2868	3olde, yielded, 291, 380, 951
3his, yes, 1397	A S <i>ic geald</i> , past tense of <i>gyldan</i> , to pay, to yield
3houth-hed, youth hood, youth,	3ude, went, 2944 See 3hed

INDEX OF NAMES, ETC

- | | |
|--|---|
| Albanak, 202, 1447
Alexander, 1837
Alphest, 57
Amytans, 1304, 2446
Angus, 2858
April, 1
Arachell, 434
Ari s, 336
Arthur (<i>passim</i>)
Ban, 202, 1447
Bible, the, 1483
Brandellis, 3086
Brandymagus, 2884, 3430
Camelot, 275, 280, 357, 407
Cardole, 2153
Carlisle, 347
Christ, 2046
Clamedeus, 2881, 3259
Dagenet, 278
Daniel, 1365
Danzelome, 435
Esquyrns, 2591, 2609, etc
First conquest king, 1064, etc ,
2568, etc
Gahers, 3087
Galiof (<i>passim</i>)
Galys Gwyans, 2605, 2613, etc
Galygantymis, 599
Galloway, 2690
Gawane (<i>passim</i>)
Gwynans or Gwyans See <i>Galys</i>
Gyonde or Gyande, 302, 551, 637
Harwy, 2853, 3206, etc
Herypes (<i>i.e.</i> Hermes), 436
Hundred knights, king of, 1545,
, 1554 | Jhesu, 2046, 2096
Kay, 254, 355, 3081, etc
Lady of the Lake, 220, 223
Lancelot (<i>passim</i>), appears as the
<i>red</i> knight, 991, etc , as the
<i>black</i> knight, 2430, etc
Logris, 2301
Malgimis, 806 See <i>Malenginys</i>
Malenginys, 2873, 3151, 3155 See
also <i>Hundred knights, king of</i>
May, 12
Melyhalt, 283, 895
Melyhalt, lady of (<i>passim</i>)
Moses, 436
Nembrot (<i>i.e.</i> Nimrod), 435
Nohalt, 255
Phœbus, 24, 2472, 2486.
Priapus, 51
Round Table, 795, 3213
Saturn, 2474
Scilla, 2483
Solomon, 1378
Sygramors, 3083
Titan, 335
Valydone, 3249 See <i>Walydeyne</i> .
Vanore, 575 See <i>Wanore</i>
Virgin (Mary), 2049, 2087, etc
Venus, 309
Wales, 599, 2153
Walydeyne, 2879
Wanore, 230
Wryne, 2867
Ydrus, 2851, 3152
Ywan, 2606, 2618, etc
Ywons, 2861 |
|--|---|